See London Monthly Review for 1765 for
notice of this work

A

TOUR

IN THE

UNITED STATES

OF

AMERICA.

VOL. I.

———In ſtruggling with misfortunes
Lies the true proof of virtue. SHAKSPEARE.

——Cold, hunger, priſons, ills without a cure,
All theſe men muſt, and guiltleſs, oft endure.

——Permitted laurels grace the lawleſs brow,
Th'unworthy rais'd, the worthy caſt below.

Faith flies, and Piety in exile mourns,
And Juſtice, here oppreſs'd, to Heav'n returns. DRYDEN.

WILLIAM & MARY DARLINGTON
MEMORIAL LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF PITTSBURGH

A

TOUR

IN THE

UNITED STATES

OF

AMERICA:

CONTAINING

An Account of the PRESENT SITUATION of that Country;

The POPULATION, AGRICULTURE, COMMERCE, CUSTOMS, and MANNERS of the Inhabitants;

ANECDOTES of several MEMBERS of the CONGRESS, and GENERAL OFFICERS in the American Army;

AND

Many other very singular and interesting Occurrences.

WITH

A Description of the INDIAN NATIONS, the general Face of the Country, Mountains, Forests, Rivers, and the most beautiful, grand, and picturesque Views throughout that vast Continent.

LIKEWISE

Improvements in HUSBANDRY that may be adopted with great Advantage in EUROPE.

By J. F. D. SMYTH, Esq.

VOL. I.

LONDON,

Printed for G. ROBINSON, Pater-noster-Row; J. ROBSON, New Bond-Street; and J. SEWELL, Cornhill.

MDCCLXXXIV.

Var
E164
S66
v.1

2144

SUBSCRIBERS NAMES.

A

LORD Aſhburton
William Pierce Aſhe A'Court Aſhe, eſq. M.P.
John Allen, eſq.
Thomas Aſhwood, eſq.

B

Duke of Buccleugh * †
Lord Viſcount Beauchamp *2 copies*
Sir Joſeph Banks, bart. Preſident of the Royal Society
Colonel Byde
Samuel Bagſhaw, eſq. of Ford
Owen Saliſbury Brereton, eſq. Vice-Preſident of the Royal Society
Captain Boſville
W. H. Bevan, eſq. Lincoln's Inn
Mr. William Butcher, Paradiſe-Row, Lambeth
Mr. Champion Bray, Mancheſter
Mr. John Blackwall, Blackwall

C

Earl of Carliſle
Earl Cornwallis *
Lord Cathcart
Right Honourable H. S. Conway, M. P. *
Sir Gray Cooper, bart. M.P. *
D. P. Coke, eſq. M.P. 2 *copies*
P. G. Crauford, eſq. F. R. S.

James Cotton, esq. late of North Carolina
Mr. Nicholas Creswell, Edale, Derbyshire, 3 *copies*
Mr. Peter Copland, James-street, Grosvenor-square
Mr. John Henry Carey, late of Maryland
A. C. 3 *copies*

D

Duke of Devonshire *
Earl of Dartmouth *
Earl of Dunmore
Sir J. Dyer, bart. *
Colonel Donald M'Donald, Highgate
Rev. Dr. Downes, Prebend of St. Patrick's, Dublin
Robert Dormer, esq. Duke-street, Westminster
T. Dyer, esq. *
Captain Henry Duncan, of the Royal Navy
Mr. Dennison, Duke-street, Manchester-square

E

Right Honourable William Eden, M. P. *
Honourable Thomas Erskine, M. P. * †

F

William Frazer, esq. Under Secretary of State
T. Freemantle, esq.
Captain Frazer, Coldstream Reg. of Guards
Captain Freemantle, ditto
Mr. Fisk
Mr. Septimius Furnis, Macclesfield
Mr. Richard Falkner, Sheffield
Mr. Charles Fox, Cornwall †

G

Duke of Grafton, 10 *copies*
Lord Grosvenor * †
Sir Sampson Gideon, bart. M. P.
Lady Glynne, Howardin-Castle, Flintshire
Lieutenant-General the Hon. T. Gage
Major John Randolph Grymes, late of Virginia.
Mr. Charles Greatrex, Manchester
Mr. Robert Gee, Stockport
Mr. William Greaves, Bakewell

H

Earl of Hillsborough *
Lord Viscount Howe, First Lord of the Admiralty, &c. &c. *
Lieutenant-General the Hon. Sir William Howe, K. B. &c.
Hon. Major-General Harcourt *
Commodore William Hotham, of the Royal Navy
Colonel Hill, late of the 9th. Reg. of Foot
Capt. David Howell, 15th Reg. Dragoons, M.P.
Mr. Hopkins
Ensign Hewgill, Coldstream Guard
Mr. Michael Harris, Millbank-row, Westminster
Mr. —— Hairs, Oxford-street †
Mr. Thomas Hall, Macclesfield
Mr. John Hadfield, ditto
Mr. Micha Hall, Castleton

I

William Jones. esq.
T. I. 3 *copies*

K

Mr. Thomas Kerſhaw, Derbyſhire
Mr. Kerſley, late of Philadelphia †
Mr. Daniel Key, Uanchester
Mr. Benjamin Kirk, Brough
Mr. Charles Kirk, Newſmithy

L

Lieutenant General Liſter
Edward Beacher Le Croft, eſq. †
Mr. P. Leyburn, late of Maryland
Mr. Charles Lees, Derbyſhire
B. L.

M

Duke of Montague *
Major-General Martin, Coldſtream Reg. Guards
Colonel Montreſor, late Chief Engineer in America *
Lieutenant Colonel Morſhead
Mr. Iſaac Martin, Bradwell
Mr. Samuel Miller, Bridgehay
Mr. Maſon, Mattock Bath
Mr. Richard Mangnell, Sheffield

N

Lord North *
Lord Newhaven
Mrs. Needham, Perryfoot
Mr. Robert Needham, jun. ditto

O

Sir George Oſborn, bart. M. P. Major General in the Army, Lieutenant-Colonel of the 3d Reg. Foot-Guards, Groom of his Majeſty's Bedchamber, &c.

Mr. Thomas Oyell, Chappel in Frith.
Mr. Oppie, Great Queen-ſtreet, Lincoln's-inn-fields
Mr. Oliphant, Fludyer-ſtreet, Weſtminſter * †

P

Duke of Portland *
Lord Viſcount Palmerſton *
Samuel Phipps, eſq. Lincoln's-inn, 2 *copies*
——— Pollock, eſq. * †
Richard Phillips, eſq. Lincoln's-inn
Mrs. Charlotte Pringle, Royal Row, Lambeth
Mr. Richard Potter, Derbyſhire
Mr. Robert Poole, Button Hill
R. P. 12 *copies*

Q

R. Quarme, eſq.

R

Duke of Richmond
George Roſe, eſq.
John Randolph, eſq. late Attorney General of Virginia
Samuel Remnant, eſq.
Mr. Ruſh, Surgeon of the 2d. Troop of Horſe Grenadier Guards
Mr. John Richardſon, Derbyſhire
Mr. John Robinſon, Haſſop.

S

Earl of Saliſbury *
Lord Viſcount Stormont, 4 *copies*
Lord Viſcount Sackville *
Lord Southampton, 2 *copies*

Sir

Sir Richard Sutton, bart. M. P. *
Colonel Stevens, 1ſt. Reg. Foot Guards, Equerry to the Prince of Wales, and Aid de Camp to the King, &c.
Colonel Sherriff, Portland Place *
Governor Sinnott, of Niagara in Canada
Major Stockton, late of New-Jerſey
Mr. G. S.
Miſs Stopford, Stockport
Mr. John Smith, Mancheſter
J. F. S. 7 *copies*

T

Major General H. Trelawny, 1ſt Major of the Coldſtream Reg. Guards
Mr. Richard Threſher, Strand
Mr. John Thomas, Dean-ſtreet, Soho

V

Lieutenant General Vernon, Lieutenant Governor of the Tower

W

Lord Weſtcote *
Sir John Borlaſe Warren, bart. M. P. &c.
J. Wilmot, eſq. M. P. 2 *copies*
Thomas White, eſq. Lincoln's-Inn
Eardly Wilmot, eſq.
Enſign Webb, Coldſtream Reg. Guards
Mr. James Wright, Heaſield

Z

W. Z. 5 *copies*

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE late great and very extraordinary revolution in America, a revolution with its attending circumſtances unparalleled in the annals of hiſtory, having excited the curioſity of all ranks of people, not only of Great Britain, but of every nation in Europe, to procure the moſt authentic information concerning that country, and there being nothing of the kind hitherto publiſhed that gives any ſatisfactory account thereof, is the cauſe of my offering theſe volumes to the public.

The moſt painful taſk to me throughout this work has been to mention the hardſhips

ſhips and ſeverities I have undergone, as theſe are now at an end, and freely forgiven; for although I may have much to lament, I ſolemnly declare that I have no reſentments to indulge, no revenge to purſue; and the few inſtances I met with of kind and generous treatment have afforded me infinite gratification and pleaſure to relate.

Far be it from me to wiſh to widen a breach already too much extended; but thoſe illiberal and vindictive principles which hitherto appear to have actuated the public as well as private conduct of the preſent prevailing party in America, ſeem ill calculated for that conciliation which it is certainly ſtill more the intereſt of America than of Great Britain to effect and cheriſh.

As the ſword of war is now returned to the ſcabbard, and the beneficial arts of peace may be ſafely and advantageouſly cultivated, it would afford infinite ſatisfaction

faction and pleaſure to every benevolent mind to ſee, between theſe new American republics, and Great Britain their parent ſtate, a contention in good offices, liberal conduct, and generoſity, and in ſhewing ſubſtantial proofs on both ſides of having buried in oblivion all their former animoſities and diſtruſts. It is evidently more in the power of the Americans than of the Britiſh nation, to evince this conciliatory diſpoſition, by the lenient conduct they may hereafter adopt towards Britain's former and now forſaken friends, the American loyaliſts, whom peculiar circumſtances may leave or throw into their power.

Why may not this deſirable emulation be excited and adopted? The demon of diſcord cannot always influence, nor will the veil of factious reſentments and party-ſpirit, it is to be hoped, long remain over the ſight and underſtanding of even the moſt zealous of the republicans; they generally poſſeſs intelligent minds, and conſequently

ſequently muſt ſoon diſcover and purſue their own intereſt, which, beyond all doubt, is a cloſe, eſtabliſhed, and permanent connection with Great Britain; but it muſt be a connection founded on confidence, and the baſis of that confidence muſt be a reciprocal intereſt, urbanity, and friendſhip.

ERRATA to VOL. I.

page 22, line 22, *for* excurſion, *read* exertion. P. 29, l. 10, *dele* been. P. 31, l. 18, *for* ſerviſeable, *r.* ſerviceable. P. 33, l. 3, *r.* a thouſand pounds weight. P. 36, l. 15, *r.* expanſes. P. 41, l. 7, *for* excurſion, *r.* exertion. P. 75, l. 21, *dele* upon. P. 78, l. 14, *r.* people's. P. 110, l. 7, *r.* continues. P. 118, l. 11, *for* or, *r.* and. P. 129, *for* Chap. XVI. *r.* XVII. P. 129, l. 5 of the contents, *for* Another ſingular trick, *r.* An extraordinary occurrence. P. 129, l. 18, *for* rather, *r.* ſomewhat. P. 131, l. 9, *dele* with. P. 132. l. 21, *r.* high fun. P. 140, l. 11, *for* experienced, *r.* dextrous. P. 145, l. 15, *r.* within a narrower. P. 155, ſtanza iii. l. 3. *for* the poor, *r.* though poor. P. 159, l. 5. *for* from, *r.* form. P. 173, l. 5, *r.* the men. P. 182, l. 6, *r.* a variety. P. 199, l. 3, *r.* prepoſſeſſed. P. 211. l. 15, *r* reſidence. P 215, l. 28, *for* ſect, *r.* ſex. P. 290, l. 16, *r.* as all the reſt of their. P. 293, l. 3, *dele* the, *r.* each buſhel. P. 306, l. 6, *for* paſs, *r.* paſſes. P. 319, l. 16, *r.* Ouaſiotto. P. 335, l. 20, 21, 22, 23, *r.* when the incloſure is formed, theſe rails are laid zig zag upon each other, every one croſſing the other obliquely at each end, in regular ſucceſſion and erection, for ten or eleven. P. 347, l. 16, *r.* Kaſquaſquias. P. 349, l. 13, 20, 21, *r.* Ouiſconſins, Puads. P. 373, l. 19, *for* land, *r.* load.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

The Author's Apology. Acknowledgement of Deficiences. Reasons that induced him to publish these Volumes. Similies. Solicits for Indulgence and Candor. Professes Impartiality and Diffidence. - - - Page 1

CHAP. I.

First Appearance of Land. Capes of Virginia. Chesapeak-Bay. Hampton-Roads. Musketoes. Norfolk. James-River. James-Town. Plantations. Williamsburg - - - - - - 7

CHAP. II.

Williamsburg. Races. Breed of Running Horses. 17

CHAP. III.

The different beautiful Situations, and Gentlemen's Seats, on James-River. - - - - - - 24

CHAP. IV.

Richmond. Falls of James-River, &c. - 30

CHAP. V.

Inhabitants. Climate. Sky. Thunder and Lightning. Face of the Country. Bullfrogs. Strange and tremendous Sounds. Inchantment. Negroes. 35

CHAP. VI.

Manner of Life of each Rank of the Inhabitants. Hard Fare and ſevere Treatment of the Negroes. Page 41

CHAP. VII.

Houſes. Ordinaries, or Inns. A ſtrange Animal. Black Snakes. Devour Frogs and Mice. Faſcinate Birds in the Air. Flying Squirrels, &c. - - 49

CHAP. VIII.

Quality and Appearance of the Soil. Wheat. Indian-Corn. Tobacco. Peterſburg. Falls of Appamattox. Blandford. Pokahuntas. Indian Emperor's Daughter. Randolph and Bolling Families. The River Appamattox. - - - - 57

CHAP. IX.

General Character, and great Hoſpitality of the Virginians. Number of Inhabitants in Virginia. - - 65

CHAP. X.

A wretched Situation. Nottoway-River. Horſes refuſe to eat Bacon. Troubleſome Companion. Maherren-River. - - - - - - - - 73

CHAP. XI.

North Carolina. Halifax-Town. Roanoak-River. Falls. Rock Fight. Floods. - - - 84

CHAP. XII.

Lofty Timber. Method of clearing Land. Woods on Fire. Dreadful Conflagrations. - - 92

CHAP. XIII.

Inhabitants of the Country and of the Towns. Claſſes of People. Stores. Planters. Methods of Trade and Commerce. - - - 98

CHAP. XIV.

Tarburg. Attacked by an itinerant New-light Preacher. Get Loſt. Strange Ignorance and uncouth Appearance of the Inhabitants. Inſtance of extraordinary Hoſpitality and Benevolence. Chowan Sound. Moccoſſon Snakes. Rattle Snakes. Cure for their Bite. Page 101

CHAP. XV.

Extraordinary Woman. American General an Innkeeper. Dreadful Thunder-clap. Simplicity of the Negroes. An extraordinary Inſtance thereof. - - 111

CHAP. XVI.

Nutbuſh Creek. Member of Congreſs. Anecdotes of the famous Henderſon, and the Origin of the new Settlement of Kentucky. - - - - 122

CHAP. XVII.

Harriſburg. Tar-River. Taken Sick. Extremely ill. Uncivilized Inhabitants. Handſome Women. Inſtances of worſe than ſavage Brutality. A very ſingular and diverting Trick. Meet with a beautiful Girl. An extraordinary Occurrence. - 129

CHAP. XVIII.

Woods. Glades, or Savannahs. Licks. Hunters. Wild Horſes. Peculiar Sentiments of an European, on his Arrival in America. - - 140

CHAP. XIX.

Appearance of the Country. Diſeaſes of the Climate. Snakes. Game. Raccoons. Deſcription of the Oppoſſum. Beer made of Perſimmons. Cheapneſs of Land. Delightful Climate. Stanzas written in Solitude. 147

CONTENTS.

CHAP. XX.

Newſe-River. Hillſborough. Strong Poſt. Haw Fields. Singular Phenomenon. Accounted for. - Page 159

CHAP. XXI.

Haw-River. Deep-River. Cape Fear River. Carroway Mountains. Grand and elegant Perſpective. Bad Accommodations. Unſuitable to an Epicure, or a Petit-Maitre. - - - - 167

CHAP. XXII.

Yadkin-River. Saliſbury. Beautiful Perſpective. Tryon Mountain. Bruſhy Mountains. The King Mountain diſtinguiſhed for the unhappy Fate of the gallant Major Ferguſon. - - - - - - 174

CHAP. XXIII.

Blazed Path. Origin and Uſe thereof. Deſcription of a Back Wood's Rifleman. His ſtrange Dreſs and peculiar Sentiments. - - - - - 178

CHAP. XXIV.

Catawba Indians. The King. Once a powerful Nation. Cuſtoms. Depopulation. Cauſes thereof. Manner of Life. Abortions of the young Women. - 184

CHAP. XXV.

Catawba's vaſt Property. Their Manufactures. Their Naſtineſs. - - - 192

CHAP. XXVI.

Catawba-River. An uncommon Inſtance of Penury. Rich Miſer. Wretchedneſs and Miſery of his Slaves. Wateree-River. Congarees-River. Santee-River. Their great Extent. Fertility of the Soil. - 196

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Camden. Lands. Rivers. Insects. Inhabitants. Rice. Indigo. Manure. - - Page 202

CHAP. XXVIII.

Great Curiosity of the lower Class of Inhabitants. Impertinent Questions. Conjectures of my Guide. Rendered serviceable. - - - 209

CHAP. XXIX.

Salisbury. Moravian River. Moravian Towns and Settlement. Salem. Bethania. Bethabara. Their Situations. Flourishing State. Their Manufactures. Produce. Peculiar Customs and Police. Women in common - - - - - 213

CHAP. XXX.

The Ararat Mountains. Tryon Mountains. Moravian Mountains. Carraway Mountains. Grand and beautiful perspective Views. - - - - 219

CHAP. XXXI.

Great Allamance. Regulators. Hillsborough. Colonel Mac Donald, and the unfortunate Loyalists of North Carolina. Their Disaster at More's Creek Bridge. Their hard Fate and barbarous Treatment. - 225

CHAP. XXXII.

Hillsborough. Courts of Judicature. Numbers of Inhabitants in North Carolina. Depopulation. Bewildered and lost. Uninhabited Forest. Wild Beasts. Great Danger. Hycoe Creek. Country-Line Creek. 234

CHAP. XXXIII.

Mr. Hart. A most hospitable, benevolent Person. An accomplished Gentleman. Agreeable Surprise. Fortunate

tunate Escape. Mr. Bailey. Strange Manner of Lodging. A lovely Girl. Sawra Towns. Sawra Nation. Upper Sawra Towns. - Page 245

CHAP. XXXIV.

Dan-River. Strange and singular Phenomenon. Great Extent. Lower Sawra Towns. A vast and profitable Purchase. Horn, or Hoop Snake. Most poisonous. Alarming Accounts of the Indians. - - 255

CHAP. XXXV.

Ford the Dan. Fall in. Part with my lovely Guide. Get lost. Perplexing Situation. Come upon a Number of Indians. Their Behaviour. Their Hospitality and Kindness. - - - - - 267

CHAP. XXXVI.

Directed the Way by the Indians. Leatherwood Creek. Plantations abandoned. Beaver Creek. Arrive at the Fort. Refused Admittance. - 274

CHAP. XXXVII.

Threaten to set Fire to the Fort. Admitted. Shocking Scenes of Iniquity and Obsceneness within. Ride out and visit the Plantations around. Resolve to set out on my Journey. - - - - 280

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Situation of the Fort. Smith's River. Soil. Ginseng. Snake-root. Prices of Wheat, Corn, Beef, Pork, Tobacco, &c. Culture of Indian Corn. Its great and universal Utility. - - - 288

CHAP. XXXIX.

Set out for Kentucky. Visit the Summit of the Wart Mountain. Description of a most extensive, grand, and elegant Perspective. Ideas raised in the Mind. 300

Descend

CHAP. XL.

Deſcend the Mountain. Croſs the New River. Middle Fork of Holſton. Arrive at Stahlmakers. Croſs the North Branch of Holſton. Croſs Clinches-River. Aſcend the great Allegany. - Page 309

CHAP. XLI.

Croſs the vaſt Allegany Mountains. Fall upon the Warrior's Branch. Croſs the Ouſiotto Mountains. Impenetrable Thickets of Laurel. River of Kentucky. Arrive at the famed new Settlement on Kentucky. 319

CHAP. XLII.

The famed Settlement of Kentucky. Mr. Henderſon no military Man. Injudicious Forts. A fine commanding Situation. Want of Subordination in America. Hardy Race, but illiberal. Elephants Bones on the Ohio. - - - 326

CHAP. XLIII.

The Rivers Kentucky and Ohio. Woods and Incloſures. Game. Wild Beaſts and Fiſh. A general Account of the Indians. Their Character. Diſpoſitions and Numbers. - - - 334

CHAP. XLIV.

A Liſt of the Names of all the different Indian Nations on the Continent of North America, with their Situations, and the Number of Gun-men or Warriors in each Nation. - - - 347

CHAP. XLV.

Leave Kentucky. Sail down the Ohio. The Falls of the Ohio. Agreeable Companions. Enter the Miſſiſſippi, and proceed down that River. Meet ſome Chickeſaws. Their

Their fine Horſes. A gallant Nation. Attacked by a vaſt Superiority of French and Indians. Defeat them. Their Origin. Their Coavalry. - Page 353

CHAP. XLVI.

Leave Yaſſous. Arrive at Natches. Proceed to New Orleans. French Inhabitants averſe to Spaniſh Government. Inſurrection quelled. Earneſtly wiſh for Britiſh Liberty. Number of Families in New Orleans and Louiſiana. - - - 365

CHAP. XLVII.

Dangerous Alligators. Vaſt Fertility of the Soil. Spaniſh Beards. Wait on the Governor. New Orleans. Great Diſtreſſes of ſome Engliſh and French impriſoned by the Spaniards in New Mexico. Vaſt Flocks of Cattle and Horſes. Extenſive Savannahs. A good Prieſt. Leave New Orleans. Arrive at Manchac. Coaſt along the Gulf of Mexico. Mobile, Penſacola, Apalachichola, &c. - - - - 371

CHAP. XLVIII.

The Rivers Miſſiſſippi, Miſſouris, Illinois, Yaſſous, Akanſas, Rouge, Apalachichola, Mobile, &c. Colorado. North-River, or Rio Bravo. New Mexico. Gulf of California. Mines of Potoſi. Acapulco. Old Mexico. La Vera Cruz. Diſtances of Places. Deſcription of the Country. - - - 385

INTRO-

INTRODUCTION.

The Author's Apology. Acknowledgement of Deficiences. Reaſons that induced him to publiſh theſe Volumes. Similies. Solicits for Indulgence and Candor. Profeſſes Impartiality and Diffidence.

THE author of the following ſheets has no apology or excuſe to offer for their publication, but ſincerely good intentions, to which, however, he may juſtly lay claim; and an earneſt deſire of communicating, and transfuſing throughout this the parent ſtate of Britiſh America, a more general as well as a more particular knowledge of that extenſive and extraordinary country, than ſeems to prevail at this intereſting period, notwithſtanding the great, though lately much to be lamented hoſtile intercourſe between that vaſt continent and theſe kingdoms.

He candidly acknowledges a multitude of deficiences, originating in want of abilities. They are written without ornament or elegance, perhaps in ſome reſpects not perfectly accurate, being compoſed under peculiarly diſadvantageous circumſtances: but although the ſubject, as well as the matter, be entirely new, yet he has ſtrictly adhered to truth, which has been his invariable guide and director.

Having very lately arrived in England from America, where he had made many extenſive journies, and fatiguing, perilous expeditions, prompted by unbounded curioſity, and an inſatiable enthuſiaſtic deſire of knowledge, during a reſidence in that country for a conſiderable length of time, in which he had become perfectly reconciled and habituated to the manners, cuſtoms, diſpoſitions, and ſentiments of the inhabitants, he eagerly ſought out, and purſued with a degree of avidity rarely felt, every treatiſe and publication relative to America, from the firſt diſcovery by the immortal Columbus,

down

down to Carver's late Travels therein, and even the Penſilvania Farmer's Letters, by Mr. Hector St. John (if indeed ſuch a perſon ever exiſted); but always had the extreme mortification to meet with diſappointment in his expectations, every one graſping at, and enlarging on the greater objects, and not a ſingle author deſcending to the minutiæ, which compoſe as well the true perſpective, as the real grand intercourſe and commerce of life.

Actuated by theſe motives, he was induced to hazard this undertaking, wiſhing to ſupply that neceſſary ſhare of inferior knowledge, which to him appeared to be wanting in Great Britain, the original ſeat of empire, from the deficiences already pointed out.

For a deſcription of the formation of a ſingle brick, of a vaſt multitude of which, artfully arranged, prodigious buildings and elegant palaces are conſtructed, to a perſon entirely unacquainted with ſuch a thing, is as neceſſary, beneficial, and ſometimes equally agreeable as the deſcription of the edifice itſelf.

And the particular mode in forming the compoſition for making the fineſt china is more ſought after, and certainly of no leſs value, than the moſt elegant, rich, and expenſive ſet of porcelain of the beſt Dreſden manufacture.

In one reſpect he ſolicits the indulgence of the public. As ſeveral matters related in the courſe of the following pages are perfectly novel, uncommon, and ſtrange to an European reader, eſpecially to a Briton, who may thereby be induced to decide againſt the veracity and probability of the whole, from the apparent incredibility, to him, of ſuch ſingular phenomena, and in his opinion, marvellous, ſurpriſing relations; on theſe occaſions, he entreats the man of candour only to ſuſpend his cenſure and judgment, in ſuch inſtances, either until he meets with ſome intelligent perſon in whom he can confide, and on whoſe deciſion he may rely, who has made a conſiderable reſidence in, and progreſs through that extraordinary country; or until he communicates

municates his doubts and difficulties through the channel of the public, and ballances in his mind the weight of the explanation and defence he may obſerve in reply, ſupported by ſuch authority as may be adduced.

For however ſingular, wonderful, and aſtoniſhing ſome things herein may appear, yet the author ſolemnly declares he has been guided ſolely by nature and truth, which, during the courſe of his life, as well as in this relation, he has always endeavored to purſue, and to pay implicit obedience to their venerable dictates.

On this principle alone he has attempted to ſolve every difficulty that occurred to him in his travels; and ſuch uncommon appearances, and ſtrange phenomena, as to ſome have ſeemed not to be eaſily accounted for, he has always found more reconcilable to, and conſiſtent with, the plain and ſimple chain of events, regularly proceeding from natural cauſes, than the imaginary ſplendid

embelliſhments of fiction, however ingenious and elegant.

Should theſe Volumes be favorably received, and deemed to merit the notice and approbation of the public, he means to proceed with a brief account of the late war, in regular progreſſion, from its commencement down to the preſent period. If otherwiſe, he conceives the publication of two volumes void of deſert, is a ſufficient obtruſion on the public, to whom, as well as to himſelf, it will be moſt agreeable, and more diſcreet, to cancel or ſuppreſs the remainder.

However, he truſts that a proper diſtinction will be made between his capacity and his good intentions, flattering himſelf, that what is wanting in the former may be ſupplied by the latter; and will endeavour to atone for his deficiences in abilities, by the ſtricteſt candour and impartiality.

On theſe grounds, therefore, he reſts his expectations, and awaits the deciſion.

A

TOUR

IN THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

CHAP. I.

First Appearance of Land. Capes of Virginia. Chesapeak-Bay. Hampton-Roads. Muſketoes. Norfolk. James-River. James-Town. Plantations. Williamſburg.

WE came in ſight of land, on the fourth day of Auguſt, in the forenoon, in a fine day, with a clear ſerene ſky. It appeared at a diſtance like the tops of the trees juſt emerging above the horizon, on the ſurface of the water; and

as the ſhip approached aroſe higher, but only the height of the pines, with which all the land on the ſea board is covered; for the whole coaſt is very low, and ſoundings are found at a great diſtance from the ſhore, which gradually decreaſe as you advance nearer the land.

This regular decreaſe of the ſoundings, and the change of colour in the water, are the only preſervatives of ſhips, in the night and hazy weather, from running on this dangerous, ſhallow, flat coaſt, without perceiving it until too late; for there is no light-houſe near the Capes of Virginia: a moſt laudable intention of erecting one on Cape Charles having been fruſtrated by a diſagreement between the aſſemblies or parliaments of Virginia and Maryland, at whoſe joint expence it was to have been built and ſupported; and by the commencement of the late inauſpicious hoſtilities in America.

We ſoon ſailed within the Capes of Virginia, Cape Henry and Cape Charles, which laſt is an iſland named Smith's.

We

We paſt Lynhaven Bay on our left, and the opening of the Cheſapeak on the right, and in the evening anchored in Hampton Road, which appears to be very ſafe.

The diſtance between the Capes is about twelve miles, but the vaſt bay of Cheſapeak widens after you enter, until it becomes about thirty miles over, near thirty-five Engliſh leagues within land; then the breadth decreaſes from thence to the head of it, and is generally from fifteen to five miles, which is the breadth of it at its extremity, where the Elk and the mighty river Suſquahannah fall into it, at about three hundred miles diſtance from the ſea, through the whole of which vaſt extent the tide ebbs and flows.

The night being calm we were aſſaulted by great numbers of muſketoes, a very noxious fly, which ſeems to be of the ſpecies of gnats, but larger and more poiſonous, leaving a hard tumor wherever they bite, with an intolerable and painful itching; they penetrate the ſkin, fill themſelves with blood, and make their principal

principal attacks in the night, accompanied by a ſmall, ſhrill, diſagreeable note, the very ſound of which effectually prevents you from ſleep, after you have been once bit.

On the day following, the captain of the ſhip, Mr. R——, and I went up Elizabeth River, in the yaul, to Norfolk, about twenty miles, where we dined very agreeably, and returned that evening to the ſhip in Hampton Road, ſo that I had not at this time an opportunity of ſeeing much of the town. However, it appears to be charmingly ſituated at the forks of a very pleaſant river, the Elizabeth, on the north-eaſt ſide, Mr. Sprowle's little village of Goſport being on the ſouth, and the pretty town of Portſmouth on the ſouth-weſt ſide, over againſt Norfolk, at the diſtance of about eight hundred yards, which is the breadth of the river there; with ſufficient depth of water for a ſhip of the line.

Norfolk is a corporation, with a mayor, aldermen, &c. in a flouriſhing ſtate of

improvement, and increaſing daily; it contains about ſeven thouſand inhabitants, of all colours and denominations, of which perhaps more than two thouſand are whites. But it was by no means in ſuch a ſtate of increaſe and improvement as the more inland towns, at or near the falls of the great rivers; theſe being the chief emporiums of trade and commerce for the large, populous, and extenſive back country, weſt and ſouth of them; and, having alſo all the advantages of navigation, intercept the inland trade from Norfolk, which renders it, though flouriſhing, yet only ſo in an inferior degree.

[Soon after the commencement of the late unhappy and ill-fated hoſtilities in America, the beautiful town of Norfolk fell a ſacrifice to the miſtaken fury and devaſtations of civil war; in an unfortunate meaſure of the Britiſh governor of Virginia, rendered excuſable however, and even very juſtifiable, by the circumſtances

ſtances attending it; and the more imprudent, criminal, and even vindictive, ſavage depredations of a back-wood's mob of American ſoldiery, who ſeemed then to carry their unjuſt, barbarous, and ill-grounded reſentments againſt all the low-country and ſea-coaſt; having propoſed even to ſpread deſolation throughout the whole, merely becauſe it was within reach and command of the Britiſh navy; and becauſe the principles and conduct of the inhabitants were more temperate and liberal than theirs.

The American ſoldiery, chiefly then back-woods riflemen, taking every opportunity of firing from under the cover of the houſes and wharfs, upon the Britiſh troops, and loyaliſts who had been compelled to ſeek refuge on board the ſhipping then in the river, by this means picking off a few individuals every day, in this ſneaking, cowardly manner; a meſſage was ſent them by his majeſty's governor, the earl of Dunmore, who was then on board the fleet, requeſting them

to

to desist from such unjustifiable practices, otherwise he should be compelled to fire upon the town, perhaps to its destruction, though very reluctantly: but they persisting in their despicable unmilitary offences, he sent them orders to remove all the women and children out of the place by a limited time, when a cannonade would certainly be commenced upon the town; and the ships of war were drawn near, and prepared for that purpose. This being accordingly executed, and the enemy galling the troops from the warehouses on the wharfs, these were obliged to be set on fire to dislodge them, which was thus completely effected; but it was universally noticed, and particularly observed by every person, that almost at the same instant the flames broke out likewise in the back part of the town, farthest from the shipping; for the rebels had also set fire to it, in many different places themselves, by order of the provincial congress of Virginia, by which means the conflagration soon became general and tremendous, and in a short time entirely

tirely deſtroyed, and conſumed to aſhes this fine town, the firſt in Virginia in magnitude, opulence, and navigation.

The Americans not only burnt Norfolk, but the village of Goſport, and a great part of the beautiful little town of Portſmouth alſo, ſince that time; and, by an act of their legiſlature, granted a compenſation in money to ſuch perſons as were well affected to their cauſe, for the value of their property thus deſtroyed.]

On the ſixth, the ſhip weighed anchor, and proceeded up James River. As the weather was extremely hot, I preferred going up in her to a journey by land; which, from Norfolk to Richmond, at the falls of James River, is about an hundred and thirty miles.

After paſſing a great number of moſt charming ſituations on each ſide of this beautiful river, we came to anchor before James Town, now a paltry place, not by any means deſerving even the name of a vil-

a village, although once the metropolis of Virginia, and ſtill poſſeſſing ſeveral privileges in conſequence thereof, one of which is ſending a member to the aſſembly, or parliament; who is now Champion Traverſe, eſq. the proprietor of the whole town, and almoſt all the land adjacent, and I believe there are no more voters than himſelf.

On the ſeventh, Mr. R——— and I, having been furniſhed with horſes by Mr. Traverſe, made an excurſion to Williamſburg, which is but a few miles diſtant; perhaps eight or ten.

The roads are excellent, the face of the country is level, the ſoil rather ſandy, but the whole land appears to be one continued immenſe foreſt, interſperſed with openings where the trees have been cut down, and the ground is cultivated, of larger or leſs dimenſions: theſe are called plantations, and are generally from one to four or five miles diſtant from each other, having a dwelling-houſe in the middle, with kitchens and out-houſes all detached

detached; at ſome little diſtance there are always large peach and apple orchards, &c.; and ſcattered over the plantations are the tobacco houſes, large wooden edifices, for the cure of that grand ſtaple produce.

We dined very agreeably at the Raleigh tavern, where we had exceeding good Madeira, and afterwards walked out to view the town, which is now the ſeat of government, and metropolis of Virginia.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Williamſburg. Races. Breed of Running-Horſes.

WILLIAMSBURG is an inland town on the higheſt land about the middle between the rivers of York, on the north, and James, on the ſouth, at the diſtance of ſeven miles from the neareſt; and is healthy for the climate.

There is one handſome ſtreet in it, juſt a mile in length, where the view is terminated by a commanding object each way; the Capitol, an elegant public building, in which the aſſembly, or ſenate, and courts of judicature are held, at one end of the ſtreet; and the college of William and Mary, an old monaſtic ſtructure, at the other end. About the middle between them, on the north ſide, a little diſtance retired from the ſtreet, ſtands the palace, the reſidence of the governor;

a large, commodious, and handſome building.

[Since the commencement of the late hoſtilities in America, when the ſeat of war was in Virginia, about the time of, or ſoon after lord Cornwallis's ſurrender at York Town, the Americans converted the palace at Williamſburg into barracks for the accommodation of their troops; who, being by no means remarkable for cleanneſs or care, by ſome accident ſet it on fire, by which it was entirely deſtroyed; thus occaſioned, as many imagine, by their neglect. It has alſo been alledged, that ſome loyaliſts, provoked at ſeeing it converted to ſuch vile purpoſes, ſo very different from the original intention of the ſtructure; and incenſed in the higheſt degree at beholding the houſe of the repreſentative of their ſovereign thus polluted by the naſtineſs, filth, and depredations of the American ſoldiery, privately ſet fire to it in the night: and they

are

are not few who believe that to this laſt cauſe it owed its ruin.]

All the public edifices are built of brick, but the generality of the houſes are of wood, chiefly painted white, and are every one detached from each other; which, with the ſtreet deep with ſand, (not being paved) makes a ſingular appearance to an European; and is very diſagreeable to walk in, eſpecially in ſummer, when the rays of the ſun are intenſely hot, and not a little increaſed by the reflection of the white ſand, wherein every ſtep is almoſt above the ſhoe, and where there is no ſhade or ſhelter to walk under, unleſs you carry an umbrella.

There is a whimſical circumſtance attends Williamſburg; which is, a part of the town (that has been added to it ſince it was firſt built) having the ſtreets laid out in the form of a W.

Williamſburg is alſo the county-town of James-city county; where the courts of common pleas are held monthly, as

they are alſo in every county in the colony; which amount to ſixty-eight in number. The quarter ſeſſions are alſo held quarterly in each county. Beſides theſe, there are two courts of oyer and terminer held annually at Williamſburg; and likewiſe two general courts in April and October, which receive and determine appeals from every county, and all the inferior courts, as well as try original cauſes for ſums above twenty pounds.

Theſe, as alſo the courts of chancery, courts of admiralty, and aſſemblies or parliaments, beſides the college, occaſion a great reſort and concourſe of people to Williamſburg; and are indeed the chief, if not the whole, ſupport of the place: for her ſhare of commerce is very inconſiderable, and ſhe does not poſſeſs a ſingle manufacture.

There are races at Williamſburg twice a year; that is, every ſpring and fall, or autumn. Adjoining to the town is a very excellent courſe, for either two, three or four mile heats. Their purſes are generally

gerally raiſed by ſubſcription, and are gained by the horſe that wins two four-mile heats out of three; they amount to an hundred pounds each for the firſt day's running, and fifty pounds each every day after; the races commonly continuing for a week. There are alſo matches and ſweepſtakes very often, for conſiderable ſums. Beſides theſe at Williamſburg, there are races eſtabliſhed annually, almoſt at every town and conſiderable place in Virginia; and frequent matches, on which large ſums of money depend; the inhabitants, almoſt to a man, being quite devoted to the diverſion of horſe-racing.

Very capital horſes are ſtarted here, ſuch as would make no deſpicable figure at Newmarket; nor is their ſpeed, bottom, or blood inferior to their appearance; the gentlemen of Virginia ſparing no pains, trouble, or expence in importing the beſt ſtock, and improving the excellence of the breed by proper and judicious croſſing.

Indeed nothing can be more elegant and beautiful than the horſes bred here, either for the turf, the field, the road, or the coach; and they have always fine long, full, flowing tails; but their carriage horſes ſeldom are poſſeſſed of that weight and power, which diſtinguiſh thoſe of the ſame kind in England.

Their ſtock is from old Cade, old Crab, old Partner, Regulus, Babraham, Boſphorus, Devonſhire Childers, the Cullen Arabian, the Cumberland Arabian, &c. in England; and a horſe from Arabia, named the Bell-ſize, which was imported into America, and is now in exiſtence.

In the ſouthern part of the colony, and in North Carolina, they are much attached to *quarter-racing*, which is always a match between two horſes, to run one quarter of a mile ſtreight out; being merely an excurſion of ſpeed; and they have a breed that perform it with aſtoniſhing velocity, beating every other, for that diſtance, with great eaſe; but they have no bottom. However, I am confident that

that there is not a horſe in England, nor perhaps the whole world, that can excel them in rapid ſpeed: and theſe likewiſe make excellent ſaddle horſes for the road.

The Virginians, of all ranks and denominations, are exceſſively fond of horſes, and eſpecially thoſe of the race breed. The gentlemen of fortune expend great ſums on their ſtuds, generally keeping handſome carriages, and ſeveral elegant ſets of horſes, as well as others for the race and road: even the moſt indigent perſon has his ſaddle-horſe, which he rides to every place, and on every occaſion; for in this country nobody walks on foot the ſmalleſt diſtance, except when hunting: indeed a man will frequently go five miles to catch a horſe, to ride only one mile upon afterwards. In ſhort, their horſes are their pleaſure, and their pride.

CHAP. III.

The different beautiful Situations, and Gentlemen's Seats, on James River.

IN the evening, Mr. R——— and I were unfortunately ſeparated, occaſioned by a very ridiculous and ſingular accident; the effect of which had like to have been tragical enough to him. Juſt when we were ready to return to the ſhip, by ſome miſtake, wrong horſes were brought to the door; and not obſerving it, we mounted them: theſe horſes being very ſpirited, and Mr. R———, having bid adieu to the gentlemen with whom we dined, ſuddenly clapped both his ſpurs in his horſe's ſides, inadvertently, with great force; the horſe inſtantly reared up, and ſprung forwards, leaving poor R—— upon the ground, at the door, flat on his back, with his ſkull almoſt fractured. By this means the miſtake in the change of our horſes was diſcovered and rectified; but Mr. R—— was ſo much hurt, that he

he was obliged to be blooded, and carried into the Raleigh again, where I left him; and was thereby reduced to the neceſſity of returning alone to the ſhip.

On the ninth of Auguſt the ſhip got under weigh, and proceeded up the river, paſſing the delightful ſituations of Sandy-Point, Cabin-Point, Brandon, Flower de Hundred, Maycox, &c. on the ſouth ſide; and Swine-Yards, belonging to Mr. Cole, Colonel Byrd's beautiful ſeat of Weſt-over, Colonel Harriſon's of Barclay, &c. on the north ſide: we anchored oppoſite to City-Point, at the confluence of the Appamatox River and the James, and about an hundred and thirty miles within land, from the capes of Virginia.

Here the ſecond mate was carried on ſhore to the houſe of a Mrs. Brown, having been for a conſiderable time languiſhing, and in great pain, occaſioned by a violent contuſion he received by a fall on the deck from the main-yard-arm, reefing the main-ſail in a gale of wind; and ſoon after he ended his days there.

As

As the ſhip was not to go much farther up, and was to receive great part of her cargo at this place, I hired a boat and four negroes, for one dollar and a half per day (about ſix ſhillings and ninepence ſterling); and on the tenth I left the ſhip moored, and proceeded up the river in the boat; propoſing to land at every place whoſe beauty of perſpective, or ſingular appearance of any kind, might ſtrike the attention, or excite my curioſity.

I had almoſt omitted to mention an unfortunate accident that happened at this place, before I left the ſhip. A young ſailor, having killed and cut up a fine large ſturgeon, that had leaped out of the water and fallen into the boat, along ſide of the ſhip, which happens frequently here; bringing in the laſt piece himſelf, in his hand, his foot ſlipped off the gunwale of the boat, between which and the ſhip he fell into the river, and was never ſeen or heard of more.

The principal ſituations that commanded my notice and admiration, were

Shirley

Shirley Hundred, a ſeat of Charles Carter, eſq. at preſent in occupation of Mr. Bowler Cock: this is indeed a charming place; the buildings are of brick, large, convenient, and expenſive, but now falling to decay; they were erected at a great charge, by Mr. Carter's father, who was ſecretary of the colony, and this was his favourite ſeat of reſidence. The preſent proprietor has a moſt opulent fortune, and poſſeſſes ſuch a variety of ſeats, in ſituations ſo exceedingly delightful, that he overlooks this ſweet one of Shirley, and ſuffers it to fall to ruin, although the buildings muſt have coſt an immenſe ſum in conſtructing; and would certainly be expenſive to keep in repair, which expence, however, muſt be greatly increaſed by this neglect.

Varina, the ſeat of Ryland Randolph, eſq. a moſt lovely and delightful ſpot: an elegant building, but unfiniſhed, occaſioned by the owner's verſatility of taſte, and perpetual alterations.

Chat-

Chatſworth, the ſeat of William Randolph, eſq. whoſe father was ſurveyor-general of the ſouthern diſtrict of North-America, &c, is a very good houſe, with an agreeable perſpective.

A Mr. Mayho's; a very pretty place alſo.——All on the north ſide of the James.

On the ſouth ſide are the beautiful little towns of Bermuda Hundred, Oſborn's, and Warwick: and a ſeat belonging to a Mr. Cary, a lovely ſituation, who has alſo erected ſome extremely valuable mills, iron-works, &c. of equal emolument and importance to himſelf and the community. They are ſituated near the town of Warwick, about five miles below Richmond, and the falls of James-River.

[Theſe valuable mills and iron works have been ſet fire to, and entirely deſtroyed, during the late unhappy war, in 1781, in an expedition under the com-

command of Brigadier General Arnold.]

I ſlept on board the boat; and on the eleventh, in the forenoon, landed at the town of Shokoes, at the falls of James-River, and immediately diſcharged the boat.

I then waited on Mr. ———, a merchant, at that place, on whom I had been been furniſhed with letters of credit, &c. He was at home, and received me with kindneſs, attention, and friendſhip. He offered me apartments in his houſe, which I accepted, and he ſeemed ſtudious to ſerve and amuſe me.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Richmond. Falls of James-River, &c.

AT this place the whole appearance of the country undergoes a total change. From the ſea to the falls, about one hundred and fifty-five miles, there is not a hill to be ſeen; ſcarcely an eminence, being one continued flat level, without even a ſingle ſtone to be found; nothing but ſand and ſhells on the ſhores, and the land conſiſts of loam, ſand, and clay, but univerſally covered with woods.

Here a ledge of rocks interrupts the whole ſtream of the river, for the length of ſeven miles; during the courſe of which, that vaſt current of water ruſhes down, raging with impetuoſity, tumbling and daſhing from rock to rock, with an aſtoniſhing roar, that is heard for many miles diſtance. The land ſuddenly ſwells into hills of a great height, and abounds with

with prodigious rocks, and large ſtones, as well as trees.

On the ſummits of thoſe hills, moſt of which over-look, and many of them over-hang the falling torrent of the James, handſome houſes are built, which command a wild, grand, and moſt elegant perſpective.

The James, here, is about half a mile wide; the tide flows up to the very rocks of the falls, which continue to interrupt the current for the length of ſeven miles above. There are ſeveral iſlands in the river among the falls, which are chiefly covered with wood and rocks; but are of ſmall extent: the tide reaches the lower end of one of theſe iſlands, which is ſerviſeable in checking the violence of the torrent of the water in the falls, and thereby favours the paſſage of the ferry boats below.

There are three towns at this place. Richmond, the largeſt, is below the falls, and is ſeparated only by a creek, named Shokoes, from the town of Shokoes, which

joins

joins the lower end of the falls; theſe are both on the north ſide of the river: on the ſouth ſide ſtands the town of Cheſterfield, beſt known by the name of Rocky-Ridge, from its ſituation.

Veſſels of ſmall burthen come up to the rocks of the falls, and large ſhips come within two miles of them to load.

At James town, the river is between two and three miles wide; and juſt above it is always freſh water: the breadth decreaſes gradually to the falls.

During my reſidence at Richmond, I made ſeveral little excurſions around in the adjacent country, on viſits to ſeveral gentlemen, who honoured me with invitations. Among thoſe, from whom I received particular attention and civilities, were Thomas Mann Randolph, of Tuckahoe, eſq. R. Good, of Cheſterfield, eſq. Mr. Cary, &c.

I alſo rode as far as Weſtham, a ſmall town on the James, ſeven miles above Richmond, juſt where the falls commence. Tobacco, the grand ſtaple of

of Virginia, is navigated down the river from the back country to Weſtham, in hogſheads of a thouſand weight each, ready for exportation, every hogſhead upon two canoes laſhed together; then it is brought by land-carriage to Shokoes, or Richmond, as the falls totally intercept and preclude all communication by water for their continuance of ſeven miles.

In floods, an immenſe body of water comes down the James, which ſwells to a great height and aſtoniſhing wideneſs, overflowing all the low ground for many miles; but at the falls, where the mountains ariſe abruptly on each ſide, and confine the river within more narrow bounds, the noiſe, violence, and impetuoſity of the torrent, is not to be deſcribed. It is dreadfully tremenduous and awful.

It ſeems that once, when the river was in ſuch a ſtate, a man, who was bringing down his tobacco to market, inſtead of landing at Weſtham, being quite intoxicated with ſpirituous liquor, was carried down the torrent; and, amazing to think

on! arrived ſafe at Shokoes warehouſe-wharf below, with his tobacco; having been brought to the ſhore, after he had got over all the falls, by boats ſent out from thence to his aſſiſtance, by thoſe, who with aſtoniſhment and horror, obſerved him in his dreadful rapid deſcent and paſſage over them. When he was brought to the ſhore, he was ſtill in a ſtate of inſenſibility and ſtupefaction, occaſioned by inebriation and terror.

This is indeed one of the moſt extraordinary accidents that has occurred, or perhaps was ever heard of; but I have no reaſon to doubt the fact, as it was related to me, and vouched for, by ſeveral perſons of credit and veracity, who were eye-witneſſes of this ſingular event.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Inhabitants. Climate. Sky. Thunder and Lightning. Face of the Country. Bullfrogs. Strange and tremendous Sounds. Inchantment. Negroes.

THE cuſtoms and manner of living of moſt of the white inhabitants here, I muſt confeſs, did not a little ſurpriſe me; being inactive, languid, and enervating to the laſt degree.

Indeed the whole appearance of the country, and face of nature, is ſtrikingly novel and charming to an European, eſpecially to a Briton.

The air, the ſky, the water, the land, and the inhabitants, being two-thirds blacks, are objects entirely different from all that he had been accuſtomed to ſee before. The ſky clear and ſerene, very ſeldom over-caſt, or any haze to be obſerved in the atmoſphere; the rains falling in torrents, and the clouds immediately diſperſing. Frequent dreadful thun-

der in loud contending peals; thunder guſts happening often daily, and always within every two or three days, at this ſeaſon of the year. Eruſcations and flaſhes of lightning, conſtantly ſucceeding each other, in quick and rapid trauſitions. The air dry, and intenſely hot in the ſummer, cold and piercing in the winter, and always keen and penetrating. During the night, thouſands of lights, like bright burning candles, being large winged inſects, called fire-flies, gliding through the air in every direction; frequently vaniſhing, and perpetually ſucceeded by new ones. The rivers, large expances of water, of enormous extent, and ſpreading under the eye as far as it can comprize; nature here being on ſuch a ſcale, that what are called great rivers in Europe, are here conſidered only as inconſiderable creeks or rivulets. The land, an immenſe foreſt, extended on a flat plain, almoſt without bounds; or ariſing into abrupt aſcents, and at length ſwelling into ſtupendous mountains, interſperſed with rocks

rocks and precipices, yet covered with venerable trees, hoary with age, and torn with tempeſts. The mountains ſuddenly broken through, and ſevered by mighty rivers, raging in torrents at the bottom of the tremendous chaſm, or gliding in awful majeſtic ſilence along the deep vallies between them. The agriculture on the plantations is different from every thing in Europe; being either tobacco, three feet high, with the plants a yard apart; or Indian corn, at the diſtance of ſix feet between each ſtalk, in regular ſtreight rows, or avenues, frequently twelve or fifteen feet in height.

While the mind is filled with aſtoniſhment, and novel objects, all the ſenſes are gratified.

The flowery ſhrubs which over-ſpread the land, regale the ſmell with odoriferous perfumes: and fruits of exquiſite reliſh and flavour, delight the taſte, and afford a moſt grateful refreſhment.

The prodigious multitude of green frogs, reptiles, and large inſects, on the

trees, as well as the bull-frogs in the ſwamps, ponds, and places of water, during the ſpring, ſummer, and fall, make an inceſſant noiſe and clamour; the bull-frogs, in particular, emitting a moſt tremendous roar, louder than the bellowing of a bull, from the ſimilarity of whoſe voice they obtained their name; but their note is harſh, ſonorous, and abrupt, frequently appearing to pronounce articulate ſounds, in ſtriking reſemblance to the following words, *Hogſhead tobacco, Knee deep. Ancle deep. Deeper and deeper. Piankitank,* and many others; but all equally grating and diſſonant. They ſurpriſe a man exceedingly, as he will hear their hoarſe, loud, bellowing clamor juſt by him, and ſometimes all around him, yet he cannot diſcover from whence it proceeds; they being all covered in water, and juſt raiſing their mouth only a little above the ſurface when they roar out, then inſtantly draw it under again. They are of the ſize of a man's foot.

Nor

Nor can you perceive the animals from whence the ſounds in the trees proceed, they being moſt effectually hid among the leaves and branches. So that at firſt this abſolutely appears to be a country of enchantments.

As I obſerved before, at leaſt two-thirds of the inhabitants are negroes, whoſe difference of features and colour, and rank offenſive ſmell, are extremely diſagreeable and diſguſtful to Europeans: but, poor creatures! they are all humility and ſubmiſſion; and it is the greateſt pleaſure of their lives, when they can pleaſe the whites.

You cannot underſtand all of them, as great numbers, being Africans, are incapable of acquiring our language, and at beſt but very imperfectly, if at all; many of the others alſo ſpeak a mixed dialect between the Guinea and Engliſh.

It is fortunate for humanity, that theſe poor creatures poſſeſs ſuch a fund of contentment and reſignation in their

minds; for they indeed ſeem to be the happieſt inhabitants in America, notwithſtanding the hardneſs of their fare, the ſeverity of their labour, and the unkindneſs, ignominy, and often barbarity of their treatment.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Manner of Life of each Rank of the Inhabitants.

TO give an idea of the manner in which a white man ſpends his time in this country, a deſcription is neceſſary of each degree in life.

The gentleman of fortune riſes about nine o'clock; he perhaps may make an excurſion to walk as far as his ſtables to ſee his horſes, which is ſeldom more than fifty yards from his houſe; he returns to breakfaſt, between nine and ten, which is generally tea or coffee, bread and butter, and very thin ſlices of veniſon-ham, or hung beef. He then lies down on a pallat, on the floor, in the cooleſt room in the houſe, in his ſhirt and trouſers only, with a negro at his head, and another at his feet, to fan him, and keep off the flies; between twelve and one he takes a draught of bombo, or toddy, a liquor compoſed of water, ſugar, rum, and

and nutmeg, which is made weak, and kept cool: he dines between two and three, and at every table, whatever elſe there may be, a ham and greens or cabbage, is always a ſtanding diſh; at dinner he drinks cyder, toddy, punch, port, claret, and madeira, which is generally excellent here: having drank ſome few glaſſes of wine after dinner, he returns to his pallat, with his two blacks to fan him, and continues to drink toddy, or ſangaree, all the afternoon: he does not always drink tea; between nine and ten in the evening, he eats a light ſupper of milk and fruit, or wine, ſugar, and fruit, &c. and almoſt immediately retires to bed, for the night; in which, if it be not furniſhed with muſketoe curtains, he is generally ſo moleſted with the heat, and harraſſed and tormented with thoſe pernicious inſects the muſketoes, that he receives very little refreſhment from ſleep.

This is his general way of living in his family, when he has no company.

No

No doubt many differ from it, ſome in one reſpect, ſome in another; but more follow it than do not.

The lower, and many of the middling claſſes, live very differently. A man in this line riſes in the morning about ſix o'clock; he then drinks a julap, made of rum, water, and ſugar, but very ſtrong; then he walks, or more generally rides, round his plantation, views all his ſtock, and all his crop, breakfaſts about ten o'clock, on cold turkey, cold meat, fried homminy, toaſt and cyder, ham, bread and butter, tea, coffee, or chocolate, which laſt, however, is ſeldom taſted but by the women; the reſt of the day he ſpends much in the ſame manner before deſcribed in a man of the firſt rank, only cyder ſupplies the place of wine at dinner, and he eats no ſupper; they never even think of it. The women very ſeldom drink tea in the afternoon; the men never.

The poor negro ſlaves alone work hard, and fare ſtill harder. It is aſtoniſhing,

and

and unaccountable to conceive what an amazing degree of fatigue theſe poor, but happy, wretches do undergo, and can ſupport. He is called up in the morning at day break, and is ſeldom allowed time enough to ſwallow three mouthfuls of homminy, or hoe-cake, but is driven out immediately to the field to hard labour; at which he continues, without intermiſſion, until noon; and it is obſerved, as a ſingular circumſtance, that they always carry out a piece of fire with them, and kindle one juſt by their work, let the weather be ever ſo hot and ſultry. About noon is the time he eats his dinner, and he is ſeldom allowed an hour for that purpoſe. His meal conſiſts of homminy and ſalt, and, if his maſter be a man of humanity, he has a little fat, ſkimmed milk, ruſty bacon, or ſalt herring to reliſh his homminy, or hoe-cake, which kind maſters allow their ſlaves twice a week: but the number of thoſe, it is much to be lamented, are very few; for the poor ſlave generally fares

the worſe for his maſter's riches, which conſiſting of land and negroes, their numbers increaſe their hardſhips, and diminiſh their value to the proprietor, the expence precluding an extenſion of indulgence and liberality.

They then return to ſevere labour, which continues in the field until duſk in the evening, when they repair to the tobacco-houſes, where each has his taſk in ſtripping allotted him, that employs him for ſome hours. If it be found, next morning, that he has neglected, ſlighted, or not performed his labour, he is tied up, and receives a number of laſhes, on his bare back, moſt ſeverely inflicted, at the diſcretion of thoſe unfeeling ſons of barbarity, the overſeers, who are permitted to exerciſe an unlimited dominion over them.

It is late at night before he returns to his ſecond ſcanty meal, and even the time taken up at it, encroaches upon his hours of ſleep, which, altogether, do never exceed

ceed eight in number, for eating and repoſe.

But inſtead of retiring to reſt, as might naturally be concluded he would be glad to do, he generally ſets out from home, and walks ſix or ſeven miles in the night, be the weather ever ſo ſultry, to a negroe dance, in which he performs with aſtoniſhing agility, and the moſt vigorous exertions, keeping time and cadence, moſt exactly, with the muſic of a banjor (a large hollow inſtrument with three ſtrings), and a quaqua (ſomewhat reſembling a drum), until he exhauſts himſelf, and ſcarcely has time, or ſtrength, to return home before the hour he is called forth to toil next morning.

When he ſleeps, his comforts are equally miſerable and limited; for he lies on a bench, or on the ground, with only an old ſcanty ſingle blanket, and not always even that, to ſerve both for his bed and his covering. Nor is his cloathing leſs niggardly and wretched, being nothing but a ſhirt and trouſers, made of coarſe

coarſe thin hard hempen ſtuff in the ſummer, with the addition of a ſordid woollen jacket, breeches, and ſhoes, in the winter.

The female ſlaves fare, labour, and repoſe, juſt in the ſame manner; even when they breed, which is generally every two or three years, they ſeldom loſe more than a week's work thereby, either in the delivery, or ſuckling the child.

In ſubmiſſion to injury and inſults, they are likewiſe obliged to be entirely paſſive, nor dare any of them reſiſt, or even defend himſelf againſt the whites, if they ſhould attack him without the ſmalleſt provocation; for the law directs a negroe's arm to be ſtruck off, who raiſes it againſt a white perſon, ſhould it be only in his own defence, againſt the moſt wanton and wicked barbarity and outrage.

Yet notwithſtanding this degrading ſituation, and rigid ſeverity to which fate has ſubjected this wretched race, they are certainly

certainly devoid of care, and actually appear jovial, contented, and happy. Fortunate it is indeed for them, that they are bleſſed with this eaſy, ſatisfied diſpoſition of mind, elſe human nature, unequal to the weight, muſt ſink under the preſſure of ſuch complicated miſery and wretchedneſs.

Having had occaſion more than once to mention *homminy*, *hoe-cake*, *&c*, it may not be improper at this time to obſerve, that homminy is an American diſh, made of Indian corn, freed from the huſks, boiled whole, along with a ſmall proportion of a large kind of French beans, until it becomes almoſt a pulp: it is in general uſe, and to my taſte, very agreeable. Hoe-cake is Indian corn, ground into meal, kneaded into dough, and baked on a hot, broad, iron hoe. This is alſo in common uſe, and to my palate, extremely harſh and unpleaſant.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Houſes. Ordinaries, or Inns. A ſtrange Animal. Black Snakes. Devour Frogs and Mice. Faſcinate Birds in the Air. Flying Squirrels, &c.

THE houſes here are almoſt all of wood, covered with the ſame; the roof with ſhingles, the ſides and ends with thin boards, and not always lathed and plaiſtered within; only thoſe of the better ſort are finiſhed in that manner, and painted on the outſide. The chimneys are ſometimes of brick, but more commonly of wood, coated on the inſide with clay. The windows of the beſt ſort have glaſs in them; the reſt have none, and only wooden ſhutters.

There is no diſtinction here between inns, taverns, ordinaries, and public-houſes; they are all in one, and are known by the appellation of taverns, public-houſes, or ordinaries, which, in the general acceptance of the names here, are ſynonymous terms. They are all

very indifferent indeed, compared with the inns in England: and three-fourths of them are in reality little better than mere ſhelters from the weather; yet the worſt of them is by no means deficient in charging high.

When a perſon arrives at Richmond, his ears are continually aſſailed with the prodigious noiſe and roaring of the falls, which almoſt ſtuns him, and prevents him from ſleeping for ſeveral nights, it being a conſiderable time before he becomes habituated to it.

My principal amuſement was walking: I took great delight in wandering alone among the rocks and ſolitary romantic ſituations, around the falls. In theſe excurſions I always carried a book in my pocket, and when I came to any place that commanded my attention, either from the wildneſs and grandeur of the perſpective, or from the obſervation of the raging torrent below, after admiring the beauties of the ſcene, I would frequently lie down in the ſhade, and

amuſe

amuſe myſelf with reading, until I inſenſibly dropt aſleep. This was my daily recreation, which I never neglected.

But I was once extremely ſurpriſed at beholding, as ſoon as I opened my eyes, a prodigious large ſnake, within a few feet of me, baſking himſelf in the ſun. He was jet black, with a copper-coloured belly, very fine ſparkling eyes, and at leaſt ſeven feet long. However he did me no injury; for I did not diſturb him, nor did he moleſt me; but as ſoon as he heard the ruſtling of the leaves, on my moving, he went off with great precipitation and ſpeed.

Another time, whilſt I was reading in a very ſolitary retired place among the rocks and trees, on hearing ſome little noiſe near me, I looked around, and juſt had the glimpſe of a very ſtrange and ſingular animal, ſuch as I had never ſeen even any reſemblance of before. It appeared to me more like a fiddle with feet, than any thing elſe that I know; the ſight I had of it was juſt as it was run-

ning behind a rock. I ſought there, and every where for it immediately, to no purpoſe, for I could not diſcover even a trace thereof remaining.

When I returned, I mentioned what I had ſeen; but no one, from my deſcription, could inform me what animal it was *.

However, nothing is more common here than the black ſnake. He is very bold and daring; yet, to the human race, entirely harmleſs and inoffenſive; nor is his bite poiſonous, and is as readily cured as the ſcratch of a briar: notwithſtanding which, it is ſaid, and I believe with truth, that he is maſter of all other ſnakes; even the rattle-ſnake ſubmits to him. This ſuperiority ariſes from the ſtrength and power of his muſcles, for he inſinuates himſelf in ſpiral wreaths around his antagoniſt, and then contracting, by that means conquers or kills him. His prey, for food, he ſwallows whole.

* For a deſcription of this animal, ſee chap. XLIII.

It is confidently reported, and univerſally credited, that they devour ſquirrels, and that they have been found with ſquirrels whole in their bellies. I myſelf have ſeen them ſwallow frogs of a very large ſize. After the frog is almoſt wholly in, if you ſtrike the ſnake, he will inſtantly diſgorge it, and the frog will leap away.

The black ſnakes are particularly ſerviceable in deſtroying rats and mice, which they ſeek after very eagerly, and devour for food: for this purpoſe, they are even more uſeful than cats, becauſe, by their ſlender form and peculiar make, they are enabled to purſue theſe vermin into their lurking holes and hiding places, which they generally do, and thereby at once deſtroy the whole progeny.

But the Americans, one and all, have ſuch an averſion and antipathy to the very appearance of the whole ſpecies, that notwithſtanding this kind of ſerpents are abſolutely harmleſs, and indeed extremely ſerviceable for the purpoſes juſt men-

tioned, yet they are as eager to kill and deſtroy them, as the moſt noxious, virulent, and deleterious of the ſpecies, the rattle, moccaſſon, and horn-ſnakes.

I have heard many ſtrange relations of the power of ſnakes, in charming birds, and drawing them down out of the air, to devour them, by a certain faſcination in their eyes. To theſe tales I formerly gave no credit; but I have now had conviction of their truth, by frequent ocular demonſtration.

I have obſerved a little bird, fluttering in the air, within a ſmall compaſs, gradually deſcending until it came down on a buſh, then hopping from ſpray to ſpray, every time lower, conſtantly ſending forth a tremulous, doleful note, expreſſive of dread and ſurpriſe, until at length it would drop into the jaws of a ſnake on the ground, that was gaping open ready to devour it.

On ſuch occaſions, I always ſtruck the ſnake, and the inſtant he moved, the bird

bird became liberated from his faſcination, flying away with the greateſt alertneſs, and would chirp, and ſoar over my head in the air, for ſome little diſtance, as if grateful for its deliverance from ſo formidable an enemy. This very extraordinary circumſtance I have taken particular notice of ſeveral different times.

Squirrels of many various kinds abound prodigiouſly, but the grey fox-ſquirrels are the moſt plenty, and moſt common: you may ſee them any where in the woods, and at any time, jumping from tree to tree, and making moſt aſtoniſhing leaps, often fifteen, twenty, and ſometimes thirty feet, from one branch to another. Theſe are the largeſt, but the flying-ſquirrel, though much ſmaller, jumps twice as far; and indeed he takes ſuch prodigious vaults, that he ſeems to fly, and appears to have wings, but they are only an expanſion of ſome looſe ſkin on each ſide of him, which affords him ſome little ſupport in the air, and breaks

his fall when he miſſes his hold, which indeed is very ſeldom.

The moſt beautiful of the whole ſpecies is the ground ſquirrel, which is ſmall, and moſt delicately ſtriped with contraſts of darker and lighter ſhades.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Quality and Appearance of Soil. Wheat. Indian-Corn. Tobacco. Peterſburg. Falls of Appamattox. Blandford. Pokahuntas. Indian Emperor's Daughter. Randolph and Bolling Families. The River Appamattox.

THE moſt commanding and excellent ſituations about Richmond are, the ſeat of a Mr. Adams, on the ſummit of the hill which over-looks the town; and Belvidera, an elegant villa belonging to the late colonel William Bird, of Weſtover, who formerly poſſeſſed a princely fortune in America, and was almoſt the ſole proprietor of all the land adjoining the falls, for many miles, even above Weſtham.

Juſt below the falls there are very lucrative fiſheries, on each ſide of the river; as there are many more on the James in different places, that yield great profit to the owners.

On the ſouth ſide are moſt valuable mills and iron-works, which are worked by

by means of a canal, cut from the adjoining falls of the James.

The low grounds on the James are extremely rich and fertile, producing vaſt quantities of Indian-corn, wheat, and tobacco. The ſoil is of a dark rediſh colour, and one foot and a half deep pure loam.

The high land is of an inferior quality, yet ſufficiently fertile to produce good crops of tobacco, wheat, and Indian corn; ſome of it is of a rediſh colour, mixed with clay, which is the beſt; and the worſt is of a light brown, intermixed with ſand.

The low grounds yield an increaſe in wheat of twenty-five, thirty, and ſometimes thirty-five buſhels, from one of ſeed: the high land from eight to fifteen for one. This is generally the produce of one acre. Much about the ſame quantity of Indian corn is produced from an acre, according to the quality and excellence of the ſoil, though it does not require

quire more than a peck of ſeed to plant it. The produce of an acre, in the culture of tobacco, in the beſt land, is about ſixteen hundred and ſixty pounds weight: on the worſt, about five hundred pounds weight. An acre always contains nearly twelve hundred and fifty hills of Indian-corn, with two, three, and ſometimes, in ſtrong land, four ſtalks in each hill; or about five thouſand plants of tobacco.

Above the falls, the high land becomes again tolerably level, and is equal in height to the ſummit of the firſt hills.

The towns of Richmond and Shokoes are in Henrico county; and Cheſterfield, or Rocky Bridge, is in the county of Cheſterfield.

On the twenty-eighth of Auguſt, I ſet out on a journey to the ſouthward, and as there is no ſuch thing as poſt-chaiſes to be obtained in all America to hire, and not having furniſhed myſelf with horſes at Richmond, becauſe I was informed that I could purchaſe them much better and cheaper at Peterſburg, which was about twenty-

twenty-five miles diſtant, and directly in my way, I rode a horſe of Mr. ———'s, who preſſed me to make uſe of him.

I was fortunate in the company of a Mr. Buchanan, who was alſo going as far as Peterſburg. We croſſed the James in the ferry-boat, early in the morning, rode through the towns of Rocky-bridge, and Warwick, which is about five miles from it.

We halted at a town named Oſborn's, eight miles farther on, to bait our horſes, after paſſing Cheſterfield county court-houſe, and a church, or chapel, at this little town. Here we dined, and in the afternoon, mounting our horſes, we arrived at Blandford, having croſſed the Appamattox river, on a lofty wooden bridge, at the town of Pokahuntas.

Here we put up at Boyd's, which is the beſt houſe of public entertainment in the place.

I ſhall never forget the prodigious and inceſſant noiſe and clamour that continually aſſailed my ears, during the whole of this day's

day's ride, proceeding from the green-frogs, and a multitude of other large inſects on the trees, and the bull-frogs in the ſwamps and places of water, on both ſides of the road. I was perpetually queſtioning Mr. Buchanan if they were not birds; and was aſtoniſhed that I could not poſſibly diſcover one of them: but the noiſe of the bull-frogs was abſolutely tremendous.

Here, at the falls of the river Appamattox, are three towns, *viz.* Blandford, Peterſburg, and Pokahuntas.

Over the river, juſt below the falls, there is a large wooden bridge, at the town of Pokahuntas which ſtands on the north ſide of the river named after the daughter of the famed Indian emperor, or chief, Powhattan (which is alſo the Indian appellation of the river James), who gave all the land around this place, as a portion in marriage, with his daughter Pokahuntas, to an anceſtor of the preſent Randolph and Bolling families, from which ancient royal blood, a branch

of

of the Randolphs, and the whole of the Bollings (two of the moſt reſpectable houſes in Virginia), are actually deſcended.

On the ſouth ſide of the river is the town of Peterſburg, ſituated under a hill, amongſt rocks, and is extremely unhealthy.

A little diſtance, perhaps half a mile below, on the ſouth ſide alſo of the Appamattox, ſtands the charming pretty town of Blandford, in a beautiful plain, on the river brink, on a very pleaſant and delightful ſpot.

The town of Pokahuntas is in Cheſterfield county; Peterſburg is in the county of Dinwiddie, in the lower corner; and Blandford ſtands in the upper end of Prince George's county; but neither of them is a county-town.

The principal tobacco trade in America centers at Peterſburg, or Bolling's Point, which it is generally called, from the name of a family (a branch of whoſe origin I have juſt related), to which the greater

greater part of the town and adjoining lands belong.

It is ſomething remarkable, that no child born at this place ever grew up to maturity, excepting the preſent proprietor, Mr. Bolling, whoſe ſeat over-looks Peterſburg and the adjacent country and river; which is occaſioned by the inſalubrity of the air, and the extreme unhealthineſs of the ſituation.

There are alſo ſome valuable mills in the vicinity of this place, erected by Mr. Banniſter, a very public ſpirited man, who reſides in an elegant houſe near Peterſburg, which are carried on by means of a canal, cut from the neighbouring falls of the Appamattox.

The Appamattox is a ſmall river, much about the ſize of the Thames, and runs into the James at City Point, about twelve miles, in a direct line, below Blandford. Sailing veſſels, ſloops, ſchooners, and flats, or lighters, come up to the bridge at the falls; but ſhips of burden take in their cargoes five and eight miles below.

In

In Blandford I found an excellent ordinary at Boyd's, and a tolerably agreeable mixed company of ladies and gentlemen. Amongſt the reſt, were a couple of old gentlemen, one of whom was a major in the army, with gay young wives, who did not ſeem altogether at eaſe, nor, in all probability, had they every reaſon to be ſo: however, they afforded us diverſion and entertainment enough to obſerve their various manœuvres on both ſides, or rather on all ſides; for each of the four appeared to be a commander in chief, and to have different purſuits and objects in view.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

General Character, and great Hospitality of the Virginians. Number of Inhabitants in Virginia.

THE Virginians are generous, extremely hospitable, and possess very liberal sentiments.

There is a greater distinction supported between the different classes of life here, than perhaps in any of the rest of the colonies; nor does that spirit of equality, and levelling principle, which pervades the greatest part of America, prevail to such an extent in Virginia.

However, there appears to be but three degrees of rank amongst all the inhabitants, exclusive of the negroes.

The first consists of gentlemen of the best families and fortunes in the colony, who are here much more respectable and numerous than in any other province in America. These in general have had a liberal education, possess enlightened un-

derſtandings, and a thorough knowledge of the world, that furniſhes them with an eaſe and freedom of manners and converſation, highly to their advantage in exterior, which no viciſſitude of fortune or place can diveſt them of; they being actually, according to my ideas, the moſt agreeable and beſt companions, friends, and neighbours, that need be deſired.

The greater number of them keep their carriages, and have handſome ſervices of plate; but they all, without exception, have ſtuds, as well as ſets of elegant and beautiful horſes.

Thoſe of the ſecond degree in rank are very numerous, being perhaps half the inhabitants, and conſiſt of ſuch a variety, ſingularity, and mixture of characters, that the exact general criterion and leading feature can ſcarcely be aſcertained.

However, they are generous, friendly, and hoſpitable in the extreme; but mixed with ſuch an appearance of rudeneſs, ferocity, and haughtineſs, which is in fact only a want of poliſh, occaſioned by their

their deficiences in education, and in knowledge of mankind, as well as by their general intercourſe with ſlaves, over whom they are accuſtomed to exerciſe an harſh and abſolute command.

Many of them poſſeſs fortunes ſuperior to ſome of the firſt rank, but their families are not ſo ancient, nor reſpectable; a circumſtance here held in ſome eſtimation.

They are all exceſſively attached to every ſpecies of ſport, gaming, and diſſipation, particularly horſe-racing, and that moſt barbarous of all diverſions, that peculiar ſpecies of cruelty, cock-fighting.

In ſhort, take them all together, they form a ſtrange combination of incongruous contradictory qualities, and principles directly oppoſite; the beſt and the worſt, the moſt valuable and the moſt worthleſs, elegant accompliſhments and ſavage brutality, being in many of them moſt unaccountably blended.

Yet indeed, notwithſtanding this apparent inconſiſtency of character, principle,

and conduct, numbers of them are truly valuable members of ſociety, and few, or none, deficient in the excellencies of the intellectual faculties, and a natural genius, which, though in a great meaſure unimproved, is generally bright and ſplendid in an uncommon degree.

The third, or lower claſs of the people (who ever compoſe the bulk of mankind), are in Virginia more few in number, in proportion to the reſt of the inhabitants, than perhaps in any other country in the univerſe. Even theſe are kind, hoſpitable, and generous; yet illiberal, noiſy, and rude.

They are much addicted to inebriety, and averſe to labour.

They are likewiſe over-burdened with an impertinent and inſuperable curioſity, that renders them peculiarly diſagreeable and troubleſome to ſtrangers: yet theſe undeſirable qualities they poſſeſs by no means in an equal degree with the generality of the inhabitants of New England, whoſe religion and government have

have encouraged, and indeed inſtituted and eſtabliſhed, a kind of inquiſition, of forward impertinence and prying intruſion, againſt every perſon that may be compelled to paſs through that troubleſome, illiberal country: from which deſcription, however, there are no doubt many exceptions.

To communicate an idea of the general hoſpitality that prevails in Virginia, and indeed through all the ſouthern provinces, it may not be improper to repreſent ſome peculiar cuſtoms that are univerſal; for inſtance:

If a traveller, even a negroe, obſerves an orchard full of fine fruit, either apples or peaches, in, or near his way, he alights, without ceremony, and fills his pockets, or even a bag, if he has one, without aſking permiſſion; and if the proprietor ſhould ſee him, he is not in the leaſt offended, but makes him perfectly welcome, and aſſiſts him in chooſing out the fineſt fruit.

But this is leſs to be admired at, when it is conſidered that there is no ſale here for any kind of fruit, and the fineſt peaches imaginable are ſo abundant, that the inhabitants daily feed their hogs with them during the ſeaſon.

In the time of preſſing cyder, if a traveller ſhould call, to enquire his way, he is generally offered as much fine cyder as he can drink, is frequently requeſted to ſtay all night, and made heartily drunk in the bargain, if he chooſes it.

When a perſon of more genteel figure than common calls at an ordinary (the name of their inns), for refreſhment and lodging for a night, as ſoon as any of the gentlemen of fortune in the neighbourhood hears of it, he either comes for him himſelf, or ſends him a polite and preſſing invitation to his houſe, where he meets with entertainment and accommodation, infinitely ſuperior, in every reſpect, to what he could have received at the inn. If he ſhould happen to be fatigued with travelling, he is treated in

the

the moſt hoſpitable and genteel manner; and his ſervants and horſes alſo fare plenteouſly, for as long a time as he chooſes to ſtay. All this is done with the beſt grace imaginable, without even a hint being thrown out of a curioſity or wiſh to know his name.

However, it muſt be acknowledged, that many of the ſecond, and almoſt all the lower claſs of the people, are ignorant in the extreme.

Their ſentiments, and all their ideas are illiberal, narrow, and contracted; occaſioned by their inactive ſituation, confined to a ſmall compaſs, and very limited ſphere of knowledge, wherein the ſame objects are ever preſented to their view, without any variation, change, or novelty, being thereby precluded from a more general intercourſe with the world, and the different members of ſociety at large.

About the commencement of the late unfortunate diſturbances, and inauſpicious hoſtilities, the American congreſs pre-

tended to have a calculation made of the numbers of all the inhabitants in each province and colony included within their domination, which they publiſhed.

But I have always concluded that oſtenſible enumeration of theirs to be greatly exaggerated, purpoſely to magnify their reſources, numbers, and proweſs.

In that oſtentatious calculation, Virginia was repreſented to contain ſix hundred and fifty thouſand inhabitants; of which near two-thirds are blacks.

I computed the true number of ſouls in Virginia to be then about five hundred thouſand in the whole, with a ſimilar proportion of ſlaves included; and they have certainly decreaſed in population ſince that time.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

A wretched Situation. Nottoway-River. Horſes refuſe to eat Bacon. Troubleſome Companion. Mahirrin-River.

I Purchaſed two horſes at Peterſburg; for the beſt I gave fifteen pounds, the worſt coſt me twenty-five pounds; and a negro boy, whoſe price was forty pounds.

I began to prepare for my journey ſouthward, having had the honour to viſit, by invitation, ſeveral of the principal families in and near this place, among whom were Mr. Buchanan's, Mr. Bolling's, Mr. Banniſter's, Mr. Eppes's, Mr. Bland's, &c.

I took my departure from Blandford, on the fourth of September, in company with a young lad from North Carolina, then on his return.

After having rode about fifteen miles we ſtopped to bait our horſes, and dine, at Hattan's

Hattan's ordinary, where the fare was ordinary indeed, and very indifferent.

The day being extremely hot and ſultry, it was rather late in the afternoon before we ſet out again on our journey, and by that means I was prevented from reaching Stewart's ordinary, the houſe I intended to put up at that night; for being taken very ill, and as it was growing dark, I was obliged to take ſhelter in a ſhell of a houſe, wherein an overſeer lived, and five or ſix negroes beſides.

The young man from Carolina left me here, and continued on his journey,

My accommodation at this wretched place was miſerable indeed, and it was fortunate for me, that I found myſelf better in the morning, or I might have been in actual danger of periſhing for want of common neceſſaries, if my ſickneſs had detained me therein.

If my ſituation, but for one night, was ſo intolerable, what muſt his be, whoſe conſtant reſidence it was?

It

It is indeed hardly to be conceived in what an uncomfortable ſtate that poor forlorn young man, the overſeer, then lived.

There might be about fifty acres of land cleared of woods, and chiefly under culture for Indian corn.

There was not another houſe nor hut upon the plantation, nor a ſingle fruit-tree.

That miſerable ſhell, a poor apology for a houſe, conſiſted but of one ſmall room, which ſerved for the accommodation of the overſeer and ſix negroes: it was not lathed nor plaiſtered, neither ceiled nor lofted above, and only very thin boards for its covering; it had a door in each ſide, and one window, but no glaſs in it; it had not even a brick chimney, and, as it ſtood on blocks about a foot above upon the ground, the hogs lay conſtantly under the floor, which made it ſwarm with fleas; water was near half a mile diſtant, and that very bad; there was not a neighbour within

within five miles on one ſide, and eight miles on the other; no book, no convenience, no furniture, no comfort in the houſe, unleſs you call by that name a miſerable thin chaff bed, ſomewhat raiſed from the floor, in a corner of the room, which alternately ſerved him for his chair, his table, and his couch.

In this wretched habitation I had little ſleep, and no refreſhment, although the poor young man permitted me to lie on his bed alone, and did not come there himſelf, but lay on the floor with the negroes; for they were ſhelling Indian-corn with their hands all the former part of the night, when their ſongs kept me awake; and the diſagreeable idea of ſuch a parcel of naſty black devils, all ſnoring in the ſame room with me, with the aſſiſtance of the muſketoes, prevented me from ſleep until day-break, when I aroſe, and having gratified the poor inhabitants of this manſion of miſery with a trifle, I mounted my horſe, and purſued my journey.

This

This morning I croſſed over a pretty river named Nottoway, at Swede's-bridge, which is conſtructed of timber. There is ſome very good land on this river, both low grounds and high; it is what is called mulattoe land by the planters, from its colour.

This river is here about as large as the Thames at Kew, but is much incumbered with wood and fallen trees, brought down by the floods.

I arrived at Stewart's ordinary to breakfaſt, which was toaſted Indian hoe-cake, and very excellent cyder, after a ride this morning of about eleven miles.

Being always particularly careful of my horſes, and they having fared very indifferently the night before, I ordered the hoſtler to give them plenty of meat. The man ſtared at me, and aſked me if they would eat it? Being ſomewhat irritated at his ſeeming impertinence, and out of humour by fatigue, indiſpoſition, and want of reſt, I anſwered, that I deſired he would make the experiment, and im-

mediately, turning away from him, went into the houſe.

In a few minutes, on looking out at the window, I was much ſurpriſed to find all the people of the place in the road before the door; and going out to enquire into the cauſe of their aſſembling there, I met the hoſtler and my boy, with each a large piece of bacon in his hand, telling me the horſes would not eat a morſel of it.

They acquainted me, that it was to ſee the horſes eat meat, by which they underſtood *bacon*, that excited the people's curioſity, and had drawn them forth into the road. I laughed heartily, and directed the hoſtler, ſince the poor ſilly horſes could not be prevailed on to taſte his bacon, to give them whatever elſe they would chooſe to eat, and as much of it as they pleaſed.

By the bye, it was a great inconvenience, and extremely troubleſome, that my boy, being an African, was of very little ſervice to me; for he ſcarcely under-

ſtood a ſingle word that I ſaid to him, nor did I know one ſyllable of his language.

This ridiculous affair induced one Andrew T———, who pretended to be a humouriſt, to make me an offer of the honour of his company, as he was then on his way to Halifax town, in North Carolina, where he reſided. His exterior being to my taſte peculiarly forbidding, I declined his propoſal, having no inclination to ſuch an acquaintance. But in this I was egregiouſly miſtaken, and altogether diſappointed: Mr. T——— was not to be repulſed with ſuch facility: he was determined to amuſe himſelf at my expence, and at my ignorance of the cuſtoms of his country, and I was almoſt compelled to ſuffer his company, for I certainly did not accept it, but endeavoured my utmoſt to avoid that honour.

I told him, that as it threatened rain, I would not riſque getting wet, but intended to ſtay ſome time, the length of which

which, however, might be uncertain. Well, ſo would Mr. T———.

When I found this, I determined to ſet out in the rain, which had now come on; and actually did ſo to avoid his company; but Mr. T——— would accommodate himſelf to every change of my mind, and he departed along with me.

When I rode faſt, ſo did he; when ſlow, he went ſlow alſo: at length I turned ſhort from him, along a path on the right, but my ſtupid ſervant continued to accompany Mr. T———; this obliged me to return, and gallop very faſt to overtake him, as he had thereby got ſome miles before me.

But deſcending a declivity too rapidly, and without caution, the road being on clay very wet and ſlippery, my horſe fell down with me in three-parts ſpeed, by which I was exceſſively dirted, as well as hurt.

Having remounted, and rode on again, I cut a moſt wretched figure, being daubed

daubed from head to foot with red clay, beſides the farther injuries I had received from contuſions by the fall.

In this ridiculous plight I overtook them: Mr. T——— fell a laughing fit to burſt his ſides, which act of rudeneſs and ill manners I did not ſeem to notice, but was much incenſed at my ſtupid black, yet could not make him underſtand my expreſſions of reſentment. This greatly encreaſed Mr. T———'s diverſion, and ill-timed noiſy mirth.

In this diſagreeable condition, and uncourtly guiſe, we croſſed a conſiderable ſtream of water, named the Three Creeks, on three wooden bridges; and a conſiderable river named Maherrin, larger than the Thames, at Hicks's bridge which is remarkably lofty, and built of timber, as all in the ſouthern part of America appear to be; having paſſed a fine plantation, the ſeat of Mr. Willis, a man of fortune, and proprietor of the original ſtock of extraordinary ſwift horſes, for

which this part of America is noted, that vanquiſh all others in quarter-racing.

About thirty miles higher up, on the ſide of this river, near one Ingram's plantation, there have been lately diſcovered ſome very valuable medicinal ſprings of mineral waters, which have already performed many moſt remarkable and aſtoniſhing cures on perſons afflicted with various kinds of lameneſs, infirmity, and diſeaſe, who annually reſort to theſe ſprings, from an hundred and fifty miles around.

We took ſome refreſhment at Edwards's ordinary, an exceeding good building, with excellent accommodations, lately erected at this place, which is exactly twenty-eight miles north from Halifax, in North Carolina, and forty-ſeven ſouth from Peterſburg in Virginia.

We reſted but a very ſhort time here, and, although it continued to rain faſt, proceeded on our journey.

At the diſtance of ten miles from Hicks's bridge and ford, we entered the province of North Carolina, and three

miles farther on, croſſed a large ſtream of water named Fountain's creek, fifteen miles north of Halifax town, which we reached that night, after croſſing the river Roanoak, in a flat ferry boat, on the ſouth bank of which the town is built.

Towards the concluſion of this day's ride, I had the ſatisfaction of retorting the laugh on Mr. T——— very handſomely, for his horſe tumbled down, and fairly rolled him in the mire, all over, three times moſt completely.

He was in ſuch a ridiculous condition and lamentable plight, being beſides a moſt unwieldy, uncouth figure, that you could ſcarcely diſcover whether the creature was human or not; nor would it have been poſſible for the moſt rigid Cynic to refrain from immoderate laughter, at beholding his rueful countenance, and wretched guiſe.

This was a moſt unpleaſant journey; bad accommodation, bad roads, bad company and attendance, and, in ſhort, every thing diſagreeable in the extreme.

CHAP. XI.

North Carolina. Halifax Town. Roanoak-River. Falls. Rock Fight. Floods.

HALIFAX is a pretty town on the ſouth ſide of the Roanoak (a river larger, or at leaſt containing more water than the James), about eight miles below the firſt falls, and near fifty miles higher up than the tide flows; but ſloops, ſchooners, and flats, or lighters, of great burden, come up to this town againſt the ſtream, which is deep and gentle.

Halifax enjoys a tolerable ſhare of commerce in tobacco, pork, butter, flour, and ſome tar, turpentine, ſkins, furs, and cotton.

There are many handſome buildings in Halifax and its vicinity, but they are almoſt all conſtructed of timber, and painted white; among them are Mr. Mountfort's, Mr. Abner Naſh's, Mr. Martin's (now an ordinary, or inn, built by, and formerly

merly the reſidence of a Mr. Elmſley, an eminent practitioner in the law), Mr. Long's, Mr. Eaton's, and Mr. Jones's; the laſt is in Occoneachy-neck, an extreme rich and valuable tract of land, about two miles from town, and is indeed an elegant ſeat.

Halifax is twenty-five miles due ſouth from Peterſburg, and one hundred from Richmond, is the capital of a diſtrict, and the county-town of Halifax county.

In and around the town the ſoil is ſandy; the banks of the river on the ſouth ſide are high, but low on the north, and very ſubject to inundations, ſo remarkably, that the ferry-houſe, a wooden building, which ſtands on that ſide, is obliged to be faſtened with ropes, tied to the trees, to prevent it from being waſhed away by the floods.

The quantity of water that comes down the Roanoak, on ſuch occaſions, is indeed amazing and enormous; trees, fences, corn, tobacco, horſes, cattle, and even

houſes, are all ſwept away by the torrent, and caried down with the ſtream.

There is a ſingular phenomenon attends this river, which is, that during days, or ſeaſons of rain, it does not riſe any thing, or but very little beyond the common magnitude; but two or three days after the rain has ceaſed, when the ſky and ſun are again become bright and fine, and the bad weather is forgotten, then, and not before, the Roanoak begins to ſwell, and encreaſes with ſuch rapidity and violence, that the inhabitants have ſcarcely time to drive their cattle, horſes, ſheep, hogs, *&c.* off from the low-grounds up to the high, before the whole are overflowed; and without this precaution all their live ſtock would be ſwept away and deſtroyed, which frequently happens, notwithſtanding every exertion and care.

There is another peculiarity attends this river; that is, the low grounds are generally higher, next the river ſide, than where they adjoin the high-land; thus,

by

by means of guts, communicating from the river to the back part of the low-grounds, which is moſt commonly a miry ſwamp with cauſeways over it, the water of the floods is ſoon brought there, by which the retreat of every living creature is cut off in a very ſhort time after the waters begin to encreaſe, and conſequently all included within muſt inevitably periſh, ſhould the inundation overſpread the whole.

However, the floods ſeldom cover every ſpot, there being ſome particular places in the low grounds conſiderably higher than the reſt, which, on ſuch occaſions, are crowded with the poor terrified animals: but once every two or three years the Roanoak ſwells ſeveral feet above the higheſt of thoſe places.

The Roanoak, or as it is ſometimes called, the Morattuck, is above a quarter of a mile over at Halifax, but very deep, and is much wider many miles above. It empties itſelf into Albemarle Sound, at Edinton, where it is ſeven miles wide,

and receives on the north ſide, the Chowan-River, or Sound; which is formed by the confluence of the three rivers, Maherrin, Nottoway, and Blackwater, and is ſomething more than two miles in breadth.

The communication with the ſea, from this enormous body of water, is through Roanoak inlet, where there is a bar, fluctuating banks, and ſhifting quick-ſands, that prevent ſhips of burden from entering this extenſive bay.

I put up at Martin's, the beſt houſe of public entertainment in Halifax.

Here I diſpoſed of my black boy, who was in fact totally uſeleſs to me; but I gained ten pounds by my bargain.

From this place I made many excurſions around it, and had the honour of viſiting, by invitation, every family of note, for a conſiderable diſtance in the vicinity.

Being one of a party that was to paſs ſome days on a jaunt in the country, I propoſed calling to take a view of the falls

falls of Roanoak. We were accompanied by Charles Eaton, eſq. and Mr. W. Park, whoſe ſeats are in the neighbourhood of theſe falls.

There was nothing remarkable to be obſerved in them, only a prodigious body of water, daſhing and tumbling over rocks: but to thoſe who have ſeen the falls of the James, theſe are no object.

There is a very extraordinary circumſtance, however, attends theſe falls every ſpring, about the eighth of May; it is called the rock fight. This is occaſioned by ſuch amazing numbers of thoſe fiſhes, here called Baſs-Rocks, coming up to the falls at the ſame time to ſpawn, that a dog thrown into the river then, would not be able to ſwim acroſs, nor could live in it one quarter of an hour: you may actually ſee them crowded thick upon each other, even to the ſurface of the water.

This ſingular phenomenon continues for three days, but on one of theſe days, in particular,

particular, the agitation of the water is moſt violent, the whole river being in a foam.

There are many valuable fiſheries at, and in the vicinity of Halifax, below the falls, on each ſide of the river.

During this excurſion we called at Mount Pleaſant, the ſeat of ——— Dawſon, eſq. on the banks of the Roan-oak, about eighteen miles above Halifax, and in returning ſtayed ſome days at the ſeats of Mr. Eaton, and Mr. Park.

About a mile out of Halifax town is a creek named Quankey (the Indian appellation for red paint, with which it abounds), with an exceeding lofty bridge thrown over it, built of timber, on the ſouth ſide of which is the ſeat of a Mr. Nicholas Long, where we frequently walked out in the mornings and evenings to drink cow's milk, which was there excellent.

About five or ſix miles farther on, in the ſame direction, is a conſiderable ſettlement, upon a pretty large water-courſe, named the

the Marſh, where we ſeveral times went, on invitation from Alexander M'Colloch, eſq. a gentleman of conſiderable note, and Archibald Hamilton, eſq.* a merchant of eminence, who carried on a very extenſive and valuable commerce in Virginia, as well as in North Carolina; and we were entertained with great hoſpitality and politeneſs by each of them.

We viſited Willie Jones, eſq. doctor Cathcart's, William Williams, eſq. *&c.* among many other gentlemen's ſeats, and met with a moſt courteous and friendly reception from all.

* This gentleman's brother, lieutenant colonel John Hamilton, is now in the Britiſh ſervice, and commanded a provincial corps, named the North Carolina loyaliſts, having behaved with great gallantry, both under the earl of Cornwallis and lord Rawdon.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Lofty Timber. Method of clearing Land. Woods on Fire. Dreadful Conflagrations.

THE low grounds of Roanoak are extremely rich and fertile, but in general too light and ſandy for the culture of wheat, which here grows much too luxuriant and high, whereby it falls and lodges before the ears fill and ripen.

The ſoil is a fine black loam, for ſeveral feet deep, and is indeed inexhauſtible, but extremely ſubject to inundations, which ſweep away whole incloſures, as well as the crops, and often leave the land covered with wrecks of the flood, and incumbered with vaſt quantities of large trees, brought down by the torrent.

The low-grounds are generally from a quarter to a mile wide; and it is obſervable, for the whole length of the Roanoak, that the low-grounds are always

ways on one ſide of the river only, never on both together, but ſtill promiſcuouſly: thus, when the low grounds are on the north ſide, there are high lands on the ſouth; and where the low grounds are on the ſouth ſide, the land on the north ſide is high, almoſt fluſh to the brink of the river. It is remarkable alſo, that wherever the high lands join the river, they are rich and fertile, but where they join the low grounds only, they are of a very inferior quality.

The timber is of an immenſe bulk on the low grounds, and conſiſts of white and yellow poplars, black wallnut, hornbeam, red bud, ſweet gum, dog wood, ſycamores, oaks, aſh, beech, elm, *&c.* On the rich high land, it conſiſts of hickory, ſaſſafraſs, oaks, *&c.* and on the inferior high land, of lofty pines, of a great height, mixed with ſcrubby oaks, black-gum, and maple.

In this part of America there are ſeven different ſpecies of oak, *viz.* black-oak, white-

white-oak, red-oak, Spaniſh-oak, willow-oak, live-oak, and ſcrubby oak.

The appearance and colour of the ſoil in the beſt high lands, is dark brown, with a ſlight tinge of red, and covered with tall timber. That of the worſt is whitiſh-brown, either very ſandy and light, or ſtiff, wet, and livery, with low, crooked timber, excepting the pines, which generally grow large, tall, and ſtraight every where, unleſs they are crowded together. But the worſt timber, on the worſt land, makes a better appearance, and is larger than the trees in St. James's and Hyde-parks.

The general mode of clearing the land in this country, where timber is of no value, and labour is of great, is by cutting a circle round the tree, through the bark, quite to the wood, before the ſap riſes, which kills it; and they cultivate the ground below immediately, leaving the trees to rot ſtanding, which happens within a very few years, and they never bear leaves more.

A large

A large field in this ſituation, makes a moſt ſingular, ſtriking, and tremendous appearance: it would ſeem indeed dangerous to walk in it, as the trees are of a prodigious height and magnitude; vaſt limbs, and branches of enormous ſize impending in awful ruins, from a great height, ſometimes breaking off, and frequently whole trees falling to the ground, with a horrible craſh, the ſound of which is increaſed and protracted by the reverberation of the ſurrounding echoes. Yet, notwithſtanding this apparent danger, very few accidents ever happen from it. I never heard of any excepting to beaſts.

When the timber is cut down, or falls, they ſaw the ſmaller trees in pieces, and heap them up together in huge piles, and in many different places, where they ſet fire to them in the winter, at which time the whole country around appears in a blaze; and the atmoſphere is then extremely incommoded, and totally pervaded with ſmoak.

For

For very frequently the large, dry, and almoſt rotten ſtanding timber, catches fire, and blazes with great fury: the fire is alſo communicated to the leaves on the ground, in the ſurrounding woods, which are there accumulated to a great depth, by falling from the trees to the earth, where they have been encreaſing, *ſtratum ſuper ſtratum*, from the moſt remote period of time; being very dry and combuſtible, they inſtantly catch fire like tinder; the conflagration quickly ſpreads many miles on every ſide, and at length becomes general and dreadfully tremendous; for there is no poſſibility of extinguiſhing, or reſtraining the violence and velocity of the devouring flames, which deſtroy and conſume fences, incloſures, timber, and all vegetation; driving even the wild beaſts before them in flocks; and their progreſs, at length, is only terminated by ſome large river, or by heavy rains.

This

This has induced the legiſlature to endeavour to guard againſt ſuch alarming accidents, by paſſing acts to prevent ſetting fire to the woods, *&c.* notwithſtanding which, theſe terrible conflagrations are ſtill frequent every year.

CHAP. XIII.

Inhabitants of the Country and of the Towns. Claſſes of People. Stores. Planters. Methods of Trade and Commerce.

THE inhabitants of this part of America may be comprehended in a very few claſſes.

All in the country, without exception, are planters, ſtore-keepers or perſons in trade, and hunters: theſe laſt are chiefly confined to the back country and frontiers next the Indians.

In the towns there are ſome few mechanics, ſurgeons, lawyers, ſtore-keepers or perſons in the commercial line, and tavern-keepers.

However, the generality of the towns are ſo inconſiderable, that in England they would ſcarcely acquire the appellation of villages.

The different diſtinct branches of manufacturers, ſuch as hoſiers, haberdaſhers,

clothiers, linen-drapers, grocers, ſtationers, *&c.* are not known here; they are all comprehended in the ſingle name and occupation of merchant, or ſtore-keeper.

What are called ſhops in England, are known here by the appellation of ſtores, and ſupply the inhabitants with every individual article neceſſary in life, ſuch as linens, woollens, ſilks, paper, books, iron, cutlery, hats, ſtockings, ſhoes, wines, ſpirits, ſugars, *&c.* and even jewelry; for which in return they receive tobacco, ſkins, furs, cotton, butter, flour, *&c.* in conſiderable quantities at a time, being obliged to give a year's credit.

By this it appears, that there is but little ſpecie in circulation; indeed there is no great occaſion for it; for a planter raiſes his own meats, beef, and bacon, his own corn and bread, his drink, cyder, and brandy, his fruit, apples, peaches, *&c.* and great part of his cloathing, which is cotton.

He has no market to repair to but the neareſt ſtore; which chiefly ſupplies him with finery, beſides the uſeful and neceſſary articles for agriculture, and what little clothing his ſlaves require, for which he pays his crop of tobacco, or whatever elſe may be his ſtaple produce, and is always twelve months in arrear.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Tarburg. Attacked by an itinerant New-light Preacher. Got Loſt. Strange Ignorance and uncouth Appearance of the Inhabitants. Inſtance of extraordinary Hoſpitality and Benevolence. Chowan Sound. Moccoſſon Snakes. Rattle-Snakes. Cure for their Bite.

I Made an excurſion to a little town, named Tarburg: it is not half ſo large as Halifax, being a very inſignificant place indeed.

I was entertained by a Mr. Hall, the night I remained in this place, and returned to Halifax next day.

Tarburg is about forty miles due ſouth from Halifax, and has not been built many years.

The chief produce around this place is tar, Indian corn, and hogs.

There is a large wooden bridge over Tar-river, at this town, which is very high and wide, yet ſeveral as good have been carried away by the floods.

I made another peregrination, which on account of the ſingularity of the adventures therein, I ſhall relate.

It was to Chowan-ſound.

I ſet out from Halifax, and rode along down the ſouth ſide of the Roanoak, as far as Pulham's ferry (about fifteen miles below the town), where I croſſed the river, and that evening reached Matthew Brickle's ordinary.

Here I found tolerable accommodations, but had to defend myſelf againſt the formidable attacks of a new-light itinerant preacher, who had perverted this family, as well as moſt of the inhabitants in the vicinity; and after exhauſting all the fire of his artillery, cant, and pretended inſpiration, upon me in vain, he very gravely and formally concluded, and pronounced with great ſolemnity, that I was an obſtinate unbeliever, and that my hour of receiving light and divine grace was not yet arrived.

Having rode thirty-ſix miles that day, I ſet out next morning, and proceeded through

through the dreary pines, which compoſe almoſt all the woods that grow down this way; and about twelve o'clock, following a path that led me out of my road, I got entirely bewildered and loſt.

Being extremely fatigued, hungry, and dry, I called at ſeveral miſerable hovels, at the diſtances of five or ſix miles aſunder, but could neither obtain directions on my way, or any kind of refreſhment; even the water was ſo very ill taſted, and inſalubrious, that it could ſcarcely be drank.

I rode on in this miſerable dilemma and precarious ſituation, among theſe ignorant wretches, until night approached, when they all refuſed to permit me to lodge under their ſhelters: "Wondering (as they ſaid) where I came from, "or why I ſhould come there, where "nobody comes; but (telling me) if I "could get to Mr. Tyers's, about ſeven "miles off, I might get quarters; for "he often had ſtrange, outlandiſh folks "to lodge at his houſe; and was a rich

" man, and had a mill, and a black-
" ſmith's ſhop, and a ſtill."

Theſe people are the moſt wretchedly ignorant of any I ever met with. They could not tell me the name of the place, county, or pariſh they reſided in, nor any other place in the adjacent country; neither could they furniſh me with any directions, by which I might again diſcover and aſcertain the right way.

Their appearance alſo is equally ſordid and mean, being of a ſallow complexion and yellowiſh hue, almoſt as tawney as mulattoes, with the ſmoak of the light-wood (the roots and knots of pine, ſo named here), which is their whole fuel, clothed in cotton rags, that had been once dyed of ſome colour, and all enveloped in dirt and naſtineſs.

With much perſuaſion, I procured one of theſe lumps of mortality to accompany me as a guide to this Mr. Tyers's, where, after much difficulty, and no ſmall hazard in paſſing over ſeveral deep and miry

miry ſwamps, I at length arrived, a little after dark.

Here I obtained ample compenſation for the churliſhneſs of thoſe ignorant creatures whom I had been among, by the hearty welcome, and kind hoſpitable entertainment I received from Mr. Tyers, who appears to be a little monarch in this domain, being the only magiſtrate in this place for thirty miles around, and, I had almoſt pronounced, the only intelligent being.

His houſe was the ſeat of plenty and plainneſs, mirth and good-humour, and genuine hoſpitality without oſtentation; but entirely out of the way from all public roads.

Here I found a large table loaded with fat roaſted turkies, geeſe, and ducks, boiled fowls, large hams, hung-beef, barbicued pig, &c. enough for five-and-twenty men.

Mr. Tyers told me, that it was but ſeldom he was favoured with the company of any ſtrangers; but when he was

ſo

ſo fortunate, it always afforded him great pleaſure to entertain them, becauſe he was ſenſible that they could obtain no refreſhment any where near him, and for that reaſon, he had given directions to the inhabitants for twenty miles around him, to ſend all ſtrangers to his houſe.

Mr. Tyers, with a benevolence and grace that would do honour to any ſtation, mounted his horſe, next morning, to accompany me for the day; both to ſhew me the way, and the country.

We arrived at a ferry on Chowan-river, or ſound (named Cotton's): it is three miles over; we croſſed it, and rode along upon a wooden cauſeway, through a marſh, which is here called a poccoſon, growing thick with tall reeds, near three miles over.

Down this way I alſo obſerved great numbers of cypreſs trees, tall, ſtraight, and lofty, in many of the ſwamps and low grounds; beſides multitudes of ſingular

gular excreſſences, named cypreſs knees, which make a very odd appearance, ariſing in the form of knees, out of the moſt miry places.

We then returned, and reached my old ſanctified landlord Matthew Brickle's, that night, where Mr. Tyers ſtayed alſo; and in the morning we parted: he returning to his houſe, the manſion of benevolence and virtue; and I to Halifax, heartily tired, and ſick of my excurſion.

I cannot omit obſerving a ſingular and very diſagreeable ſight I noticed in paſſing Chowan-river: it was numbers of large ſerpents, lying upon logs and fallen trees in the river, baſking themſelves in the ſun.

It ſeems this marſh, moraſs, or poccoſon, as ſuch places are named here, abounds with theſe noxious diſguſtful creatures.

Moſt of them were of the kind called moccoſſon ſnakes, as large as the rattle-ſnake, but thicker, ſhorter, and deſtitute of rattles, which renders them more

more dangerous, as by this means they bite without previous warning, which the rattle-ſnake never does, and their bite is equally poiſonous and fatal; ſome ſay more ſo.

They are beautifully ſpeckled, juſt in the ſame manner as the rattle-ſnake, though they appear duller, the colours of each being the ſame, but thoſe of the moccoſſons not ſo bright; for the ſimilitude between them is ſo very ſtrong, that theſe are generally reckoned the female rattle ſnakes, by the more ignorant inhabitants.

Although the bite of both theſe ſnakes have always proved certain death, yet it is ſurpriſing to obſerve, that the inhabitants are under very ſlender apprehenſions from them: indeed they ſeem to dread them no more than any other ſerpent.

However, all the Americans appear to have a particular antipathy to the whole ſpecies.

It has but very lately been diſcovered, that there is a remedy of efficacy for the bite

bite of thoſe ſnakes, and an antidote againſt their poiſon.

This is equal quantities of the juice of hore-hound and plantain, adminiſtered internally, largely and frequently, and poultices of the bruiſed plants applied to the wound.

It was a poor negroe ſlave that firſt diſcovered this valuable ſovereign remedy; and the aſſembly, or parliament of North-Carolina, rewarded him with his freedom, and two hundred pounds for divulging it. A laudable example to governments, and an inſtance of their ſuperior humanity; which will for ever reflect upon them the higheſt honour.

Notwithſtanding this plain and ſimple remedy may be readily obtained, and eaſily adminiſtered by the moſt ignorant, as both horehound and plantain grow ſpontaneouſly near almoſt every houſe, and in moſt places where the land has been cleared of woods; yet the knowledge of this great benefit to be derived from them has extended but very little, occaſioned by

by the ſmall intercourſe, and very limited communication there is in general between the thinly and diſtantly ſcattered inhabitants of this wide-ſpread country: ſo that from this ignorance, the bite of theſe noxious and deadly ſerpents continue ſtill to prove almoſt as fatal as ever.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Extraordinary Woman. American General an Innkeeper. Dreadful Thunder-clap. Simplicity of the Negroes. An extraordinary Inſtance thereof.

ABOUT the beginning of November I departed from Halifax, where with great ſatisfaction I had enjoyed a very agreeable ſociety, on my route to Hillſborough, which is juſt one hundred and twenty-two miles diſtant.

I called at Edmundſon's ordinary to bait my horſe, and to breakfaſt; which is about ten or eleven miles from Halifax.

At this houſe I ſaw the largeſt and ſtrongeſt woman, perhaps, in the world: ſhe was ſix feet two inches and a half in height, well built in proportion, ſtrong, robuſt, and muſcular as a man of the ſame ſtature. She poſſeſſed a boldneſs and ſpirit inferior to no man; and there was no bully, bruiſer, wreſtler, or any perſon that excelled in athletic power and agility,

agility, for fifty miles around, that ſhe had not complimented with a fair and complete drubbing; in ſhort, ſhe was a perfect virago, of great courage and aſtoniſhing ſtrength and ill nature.

I ſubmitted to ſome ſmall impoſition in her charge, rather than enter the liſts with her in diſpute, and run the riſque of experiencing her proweſs; for indeed this is only a contribution ſhe conſtantly levies or exacts upon all that frequent this houſe, of which ſhe is maſter as well as miſtreſs, her inſignificant huſband being an abſolute cypher.

Having received an invitation to ſpend ſome days with Thomas Eaton, eſq. at his ſeat on the banks of the Roanoak, twenty-eight miles above Halifax, I arrived there to dinner.

It is pleaſantly ſituated on the ſouth ſide of the river, which is one half wider here than at Halifax.

There is a very public ferry at this place, belonging to Mr. Eaton, and of great emolument to him.

The

The low grounds are more extenſive here than any where elſe on the Roanoak.

Mr. Eaton poſſeſſes a very fine eſtate: this plantation alone is worth at leaſt three thouſand pounds, containing about fifteen hundred acres; yet his father purchaſed the whole for thirty pounds. With ſuch aſtoniſhing rapidity has the value of landed property increaſed in this province.

During the few days that I remained at Mr. Eaton's, we made many pleaſant excurſions in the vicinity, on viſits to every perſon of any note.

In a little emigration to Oſborn Jefferies's, eſq. on the banks of Tar-River, my horſe falling lame, obliged us to call and make ſome ſtay at an ordinary, inn, or tavern, at Bute county court-houſe, kept by one Jethroe Sumner, where we found an excellent dinner as well as an agreeable facetious hoſt.

[This inn-keeper has diſtinguiſhed himſelf in the courſe of the late war, being

the general Sumner, of the American army, who has been ſo active in the Carolinas.

He is a man of a perſon luſty, and rather handſome, with an eaſy and genteel addreſs: his marriage with a young woman of a good family, with whom he received a handſome fortune; his being a captain of provincials laſt war; but above all his violent principles, and keeping an inn at the court-houſe (which is ſcarcely thought a mean occupation here), ſingular as the latter circumſtance may appear, contributed more to his appointment and promotion in the American army, than any other merit.

For it is a fact, that more than one third of their general officers have been inn-keepers, and have been chiefly indebted to that circumſtance for ſuch rank.

Becauſe by that public, but inferior ſtation, their principles and perſons became more generally known; and by the

the mixture and variety of company they converſed with, in the way of their buſineſs, their ideas and their ambitious views were more excited and extended than the generality of the honeſt and reſpectable planters, who remained in peace at their homes.]

There is an extreme valuable body of rich high land that extends five miles around Bute county court-houſe: this whole tract is ſtrong and fertile in an uncommon degree. There is ſcarcely a pine-tree to be found within that diſtance, although the ſurrounding woods on every ſide, are very much mixed with them.

Having been favoured with a kind and preſſing invitation to viſit Robert Alexander, eſq. I left Mr. Eaton's, and called upon him, from whom I alſo received every attention and civility.

Mr. Alexander accompanied me to view a remarkable place in the Roanoak, named the Horſe-ford; the only one where horſes can croſs the river, in that

manner, for a vaſt diſtance: it is fifteen miles above Eaton's ferry, and at this place the river is more than half a mile wide: it is fordable only during one month in the drieſt ſeaſon of the year, and even then it is extremely hazardous and difficult; the water being never leſs than four feet deep, and the current very rapid.

The land on each ſide of the river at this place is broken and hilly, beſides being very ſterile and poor in quality.

The weather here, at this ſeaſon of the year, is really charming, neither too cold, nor much incommoded with heat; the air and ſky being always clear, bright, and ſerene, and thunder and ſtorms much leſs frequent.

I forgot to mention, that while I was at Mr. Eaton's, one morning having aroſe very early, ſtanding at the door, I obſerved a ſingle ſmall black cloud, and not another, of any kind, to be ſeen in the hemiſphere, the ſky being a pure bright azure: that inſtant, all on a ſudden, there

there came the moſt violent and tremendous thunder-clap that ever I remember to have heard; the lightning ſtruck Mr. Eaton's kitchen, ſplit down the chimney, performed a multitude of fantaſtic freaks of electricity, and killed two negroe men, but did no hurt to two infants, then in their arms.

This was accounted the more extraordinary, as there was only that ſingle exploſion: and in the moſt violent thunder ſtorms, when peals ſucceed each other, in loud contention, for a conſiderable duration of time, any accident happening therefrom is ſeldom ever heard of; only large, lofty trees in the woods are frequently ſplit in ſhivers, from top to bottom, and ſet on fire by the lightning on ſuch occaſions.

Both Mr. Alexander and Mr. Eaton poſſeſs excellent plantations, rich, fertile, and very valuable: they are both great and eminent planters, and value themſelves highly upon their ſkill, their induſtry, and their ſuperior crops.

At Mr. Eaton's I ſaw the largeſt turnip that I can recollect ever to have heard of: it was four feet eight inches in circumference, but was of the flat ſpungy kind, and not at all thick in proportion. This turnip was not cultivated alone, but grew in a large field unmanured, promiſcuouſly with many thouſands more, numbers of which were perhaps as large as this, for I meaſured it myſelf in the field.

I ſhall here relate a trifling, or rather diverting circumſtance that may be intereſting to ſome, by evincing the great ſimplicity of the blacks.

Having taken with me a negroe named Richmond, from a plantation here, which I had juſt purchaſed and ſettled, to carry me over the Roanoak in a canoe, that I might contemplate on and enjoy an elegant, wild perſpective, from the ſummit of a conſiderable eminence that aroſe abruptly on a peninſula, almoſt ſurrounded by the river, I ordered him to meet me with the canoe at the oppoſite ſide of the peninſula.

When

When I arrived there, at the time appointed, there was no canoe, and no negroe: I called out for Richmond, as loud as I could vociferate, but had no anſwer.

It was about the middle of the day, which happened to be uncommonly hot and ſultry; I was much indiſpoſed and reduced very weak with an intermittent fever;

After waiting until the heat of the weather and the fever had almoſt overcome me, I reſolved to walk down, along the ſide of the river, until I ſhould meet or find him; as I apprehended he might be aſleep, which all negroes are extremely addicted to: but in this attempt I found the utmoſt difficulty, from the almoſt inſuperable impediments of trees fallen, and impending over the water, deep miry ſoil and leaves that ſunk to my knees every ſtep, impenetrable briars and underwood, black muddy gutts from the river, which compelled me to make circuits of half a mile to get round each of them, and innumerable ſwarms of

muſketoes, ticks, poiſonous inſects, and ſnakes.

Every quarter of a mile I loudly called him, but received no anſwer. Frequently quite overpowered with weakneſs and fatigue, I ſunk down to reſt, and as often, for mere ſelf-preſervation and defence, was compelled to ariſe again to inſupportable toil. At length night overtook me, with my cloaths torn, my fleſh lacerated and bleeding with briars and thorns, ſtung all over by poiſonous inſects, ſuffocated with thirſt and heat, and fainting under fatigue, imbecility, and diſeaſe.

In this wretched miſerable condition, I at length arrived at the place where I had landed in the morning, having travelled about five miles in ſeven hours, through a perpetual thicket of almoſt impenetrablewoods.

Here I found Richmond, faſt aſleep in the canoe, exactly in the ſame ſpot where I had left him in the morning.

Being incenſed in the higheſt degree, I threatened him with ſevere puniſhment, when

when he begged me to liſten to his excuſe. 'Kay maſſa (ſays he), you juſt leave 'me, me ſit here, great fiſh jump up 'into de canoe; here he be, maſſa, fine 'fiſh, maſſa; me den very grad; den 'me ſit very ſtill, until another great fiſh 'jump into de canoe; but me fall aſleep, 'maſſa, and no wake till you come: 'now, maſſa, me know me deſerve flog-'ging, cauſe if great fiſh did jump into 'de canoe, he ſee me aſleep, den he 'jump out again, and I no catch him; 'ſo, maſſa, me willing now take good 'flogging.'——

My pain and vexation were for a moment forgotten, and I laughed heartily at the poor fellow's ignorance, and extreme ſimplicity, in waiting there for more fiſhes to jump into his canoe, becauſe one had happened to do ſo; and therefore forgave his crime.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Nutbuſh Creek. Member of Congreſs. Anecdotes of the famous Henderſon, and the Origin of the new Settlement of Kentucky.

WHEN I left Mr. Alexander's, I proceeded up the river ſide to Taylor's ferry, which is the moſt frequented of any on Roanoak, and is ſituated on the great road leading from the moſt populous parts of the Carolinas, to the richeſt and moſt thick ſettled diviſion of Virginia.

I then ſtruck out on my left hand, into a very fine ſettlement called Nutbuſh, from a creek of that name, which runs through it; and it is a large body of excellent land.

I put up at the houſe of a Mr. Penn, a man of ſome property, to whom I had been furniſhed with letters of recommendation and civility.

From this gentleman I received the politeſt attentions, and we entered on a

very ſerious and private converſation on political ſubjects, wherein he fully opened his mind, and diſcloſed his ſentiments on that head with the moſt undiſguiſed confidence, freedom, and candour.

[The above Mr. Penn was afterwards a delegate to Congreſs from the ſtate of North Carolina; and a few days ſubſequent to their declaration of independence, while I was a priſoner among the Americans, having an opportunity of converſing with him, and finding his political principles ſo totally different from what they appeared to me to be before, I gave him a hint thereof, which calling back his recollection to our former confidential converſation, perfectly ſilenced him, ſo that he actually was incapable of making any farther reply.]

Here I alſo called at one Williams's, a lawyer, who is ſaid to be, and is very much like a mulattoe.

At

At this houſe I happened to fall in company, and have a great deal of converſation with one of the moſt ſingular and extraordinary perſons and excentric geniuſes in America, and perhaps in the world.

His name is Nathaniel Henderſon; his father is ſtill alive, a poor man, whoſe reſidence is in the ſettlement of Nutbuſh, where he was at this time on a viſit.

This ſon was grown up to maturity before he had been taught to read or write, and he acquired thoſe rudiments of education, and arithmetic alſo, by his own indefatigable induſtry.

He then obtained the inferior office of conſtable; from that was promoted to the office of under-ſheriff; after this he procured a licenſe to plead as a lawyer, in the inferior or county courts, and ſoon after in the ſuperior, or higheſt courts of judicature.

Even there, where oratory and eloquence is as brilliant and powerful as in Weſtminſter-hall, he ſoon became diſtinguiſhed

and

and eminent, and his ſuperior genius ſhone forth with great ſplendor, and univerſal applauſe.

He was, at the ſame time, a man of pleaſure, gay, facetious, and pliant; nor did his amazing talents, and general praiſe, create him a ſingle enemy.

In ſhort, while yet a very young man, he was promoted from the bar to the bench, and appointed Aſſociate Chief Judge of the province of North Carolina, with a ſalary adequate to the dignity.

Even in this elevated ſtation, his reputation and renown continued to increaſe.

But having made ſeveral large purchaſes, and having fallen into a train of expence that his circumſtances and finances could not ſupport, his extenſive genius ſtruck out on a bolder tract to fortune and fame, than any one had ever attempted before him.

Under pretence of viewing ſome back lands, he privately went out to the Cherokee nation of Indians, and, for an inſignificant conſideration (only ten wag-

gons loaded with cheap goods, ſuch as coarſe woollens, trinkets, ſome fire-arms, and ſpirituous liquors), made a purchaſe from the chiefs of the nation, of a vaſt tract of territory, equal in extent to a kingdom; and in the excellence of climate and ſoil, extent of its rivers, and beautiful elegance of ſituations, inferior to none in the univerſe. A domain of no leſs than one hundred miles ſquare, ſituated on the back or interior part of Virginia, and of North and South Carolina; comprehending the rivers Kentucky, Cherokee, and Ohio, beſides a variety of inferior rivulets, delightful and charming as imagination can conceive.

This tranſaction he kept a profound ſecret, until ſuch time as he obtained the final ratification of the whole nation in form. Then he immediately invited ſettlers from all the provinces, offering them land on the moſt advantageous terms, and propoſing to them likewiſe, to form a legiſlature and government of their own; ſuch as might be moſt conve-

convenient to their particular circumſtances of ſettlement. And he inſtantly vacated his ſeat on the bench.

Mr. Henderſon by this means eſtabliſhed a new colony, numerous and reſpectable, of which he himſelf was actually proprietor as well as governor, and indeed legiſlator alſo; having framed a code of laws, particularly adapted to their ſingular ſituation, and local circumſtances.

In vain did the different governors fulminate their proclamations of outlawry againſt him and his people: in vain did they offer rewards for apprehending him, and forbid every perſon from joining, or repairing to his ſettlement; under the ſanction and authority of a general law, that renders the formal aſſent of the governors and aſſemblies of the different provinces abſolutely neceſſary to validate the purchaſe of any lands from the Indian nations. For this inſtance, being the act of the Indians themſelves, they

they defended him and his colony, being in fact as a bulwark and barrier between Virginia, as well as North and South Carolina and him; his territory lying to the weſtward of their nation.

I beg leave to obſerve, that I do not preſume to undertake his juſtification, but only admire his enterpriſing policy, and the vigour and activity of his mind.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Harrisburg. Tar River. Taken Sick. Extremely ill. Uncivilized Inhabitants. Handsome Women. Instances of worse than savage Brutality. A very singular and diverting Trick. Meet with a beautiful Girl. Another singular Trick.

FROM the conversation I had with this very extraordinary person, Mr. Henderson, I entertained a strong inclination to pay a visit to his domain; which must certainly afford a large field for speculation and enterprise, being situated in the very heart of the continent of America, and in a great degree precluded from the general intercourse of the rest of mankind, and society at large, being likewise several hundred miles distant from any other settlement.

However, some misunderstandings and disturbances that I was informed had broke out between the Virginians and the Shawnese and other Indians, I apprehended would at this particular period render the enterprize rather hazardous; Mr. Henderson himself appearing rather intimidated at the danger.

Having proceeded on my journey, I ſlept at a place where they have dignified a few log hovels with the appellation of a town called Harriſburg, from the proprietor's name.

On the day following I forded two ſtreams of water named Fiſhing Creek and Tar River, ſome miles diſtant from each other; the laſt of which is pretty conſiderable, and very rocky.

Finding myſelf rather indiſpoſed, I ſtopped at a houſe on the banks of a watercourſe named Napareed's Creek, and was compelled to remain there all night.

In the morning I became much worſe, and ſoon found myſelf ſeized with a moſt ſevere ſickneſs, here called a *Seaſoning* (to the country and climate.) It was a violent bilious fever, and ſoon reduced me to the verge of death.

There was nothing to be procured in this place fit for a ſick perſon, not even a nurſe. Nature and a good conſtitution were my only phyſicians and medicines.

I lay

I lay for ten days quite delirious and helpleſs, and it was five weeks before I was out of danger; but even then, ſo extremely weak and low, that I was ſcarcely able to walk acroſs the room.

My ſtrength returned ſo very ſlowly, that I was obliged to make a long reſidence in this ſolitary place, but thereby I became much more familiarized with, and reconciled to the cuſtoms, converſation, and manners of the people, which, it muſt be confeſſed, are ſufficiently rude and diſguſting.

I alſo formed particular, and agreeable enough acquaintances with the ſofter ſex; who are, to be ſure, very ſingular in their manners and behaviour, although almoſt the only humanized beings in the place.

In their ſhape and features ſome of them are certainly very handſome, yet, at beſt, little better than beautiful ſavages.

But was I to relate the various inſtances I have ſeen of the extreme rudeneſs and brutality of many of the men, they would

ſcarcely appear credible to the civilized part of the ſpecies.

However, I ſhall hazard a very few of the moſt moderate, by which ſome judgement of the reſt may be formed.

They ſeem to entertain little or no ſenſe of religion, and as little knowledge, or fear, of a future ſtate, God, or Devil.

But they all, eſpecially the women, profeſs an avowed partiality for Britons, whom, notwithſtanding, they call outlandiſh folks, ignorant and unpoliſhed, thinking themſelves the only polite, knowing people in the world.

The following are ſome of the inſtances I promiſed to mention of their ferocity.

They cut off the ears and tail of a favourate cat of mine, and called it fun.

She had young ones, and the barbarians cut off the ears and tails of all the kittens; this they called high; and were exceſſively delighted at beholding the poor animals agonies and contortions in death.

I accuſtomed myſelf to go out along with them a hunting, fiſhing, ſwimming,

ming, fowling, &c. for my amuſement and diverſion.

Being once on a viſit at a Mr. Glen's, he and I went to the river to ſwim, it being but a very ſhort diſtance from his houſe; whilſt we were there, his wife and her ſiſter, who were both young and handſome, came down to the water-ſide, and in a frolic hid our cloaths.

After they had laughed at us for ſome time, they informed us where they were, and I put mine on; but he ran out of the water, and purſued the women ſtark naked.

Having caught his wife, he brought her into the room where her ſiſter and I were, locked the door, took out the key, threw her down on the bed, and notwithſtanding her utmoſt endeavours to prevent him and diſengage herſelf, committed an act that a mere ſavage would have been aſhamed to have attempted in public.

This he would afterwards boaſt of in all companies, in the preſence of his wife and every other lady, as an excellent joke, and prodigious piece of humour.

I had an averſion to the fellow ever after this, and I believe his wife liked him no better; for ſhe frequently complained to me how extremely odious he was become to her.

Soon after this I played this biped a trick, that afforded me a ſufficient ſhare of diverſion at his expence.

Being in a ſtore where Glen had juſt purchaſed a very handſome fowling-piece, I ſecretly took an opportunity of loading her with powder, and wadding her with ſpunk, charge over charge, ſeveral times, until the barrel was almoſt full, (ſpunk is a fungous ſubſtance that grows on the oak, which catches fire like tinder, and conſumes ſlowly, until it communicates the fire to whatever it touches.)

After he had mounted his horſe to go home, I dropped a ſpark of fire into the muzzle of his gun as I handed her up to him.

He then rode on very quietly, followed at a little diſtance by me and another perſon, to whom I had diſcloſed the contrivance.

All

All on a ſudden, as he was carrying her on his ſhoulder quite careleſsly, ſhe fired off with a loud report; his horſe, which was a colt ſcarcely broke, being frightened, threw him and ran away.

Being much bruiſed, he was unable to follow his horſe, and limped along towards his gun; he took her up, and began to walk ſlowly homewards, but appeared to be in a ſtate of great ſurprize and perturbation.

In a little time ſhe fired again, when recoiling againſt the ſide of his head, the cock-pin almoſt tore off his ear, and ſhe fell a ſecond time on the ground.

He ſtood ſome moments in the utmoſt terror and amazement, before he dared to venture to take her up again; which however he attempted at laſt, with fear and trembling.

Viewing her with the greateſt timidity, care, and attention, and finding the pan ſhut, he opened it, and ſeeing it bright, unſtained with ſmoak, and empty, and the whole piece without any uncommon ap-

pearance, he ſaid to himſelf, "Surely "the devil muſt have been in this gun, "but I hope he has got out now; how-"ever, I muſt be careful."

He then walked on once more, holding her out at arm's length from his body, and faſt with both hands; preſently ſhe fired a third time, when his aſtoniſhment is not to be deſcribed: he inſtantly threw her down, and fled behind a tree, terrified beyond expreſſion, and peeping at her from thence.

In this ſituation he continued to watch her, as ſhe then lay upon the ground, until ſhe fired a fourth time; upon that he could contain himſelf no longer, but affrighted, leſt ſhe ſhould turn about and ſhoot him, for he was now well convinced that ſhe was animated, he forgot his bruiſes, and ran away as faſt as his feet could carry him, keeping under cover from tree to tree, with as great caution as ever an Indian retreated from a ſuperior enemy, until he conceived himſelf beyond her reach, when he halted

to

to reſt and breathe, being juſt ready to ſink down with terror and fatigue: at that inſtant ſhe fired again, and, hearing the report, he took to his heels, and never ſtopped any more until he reached his own houſe; where he declared his full aſſurance that the devil, or ſomething worſe, had fixed his head quarters in the fowling-piece.

After he got home, he related to his wife, and to all his neighbours, a moſt lamentable tale of his atchievements and feats of proweſs, in an engagement with the devil; embelliſhed with many extraordinary and fictitious exploits in ſuperabundance.

But the fright, and the fall from his horſe, occaſioned him a ſevere illneſs, which indeed had like to have put his grand antagoniſt in poſſeſſion of him as well as of his gun.

After his recovery he could never be prevailed on to touch that fowling-piece, although he was made acquainted with the ſtratagem that had been impoſed on him;

him; and he was so ridiculed and laughed at by every one, that for a long time he did not venture to show his face in public.

This was the only act of retaliation I inflicted upon this fellow, in return for a multitude of ridiculous silly mischiefs, and stupid foolish tricks, or jokes (as he called them), which he was (before this one retorted on himself) perpetually playing off upon me, and every person he happened to fall in company with.

There was a rich planter's daughter, of her own accord, undertook to polish me (as she was pleased to term it); this was with the approbation of her parents and friends, and certainly she honoured me with every attention, instruction, and kindness.

Indeed, if presents could have rendered me polite, I must have soon become one of the most polished youths in their country; for every present she received from the young gentlemen in the vicinity (which indeed was not a few, the girl being exceedingly handsome), she insisted

inſiſted on my accepting, ſo that at laſt I knew not what to do with them.

Whilſt I remained at this place I met with a very ſingular occurrence: having purchaſed a beautiful Chickaſaw horſe, named ſo from a nation of Indians who are very careful in preſerving a fine breed of Spaniſh horſes they have long poſſeſſed, unmixed with any other; the firſt day that I rode him, he was ſeized with a violent convulſion fit; the ſecond day with another; the third day he was affected in the ſame manner, while at graſs in the paſture; the fourth day he was taken in a manner ſtill more extraordinary, his mouth was drawn up over his back, and he began to move on ſtraight forwards, in a direct line, with great ſpeed and force, beating down fences, going over the trunks of fallen trees, and every obſtruction in his way; in this manner he ruſhed on into woods, far diſtant from ſettlements, and was followed for ſeven miles, but being then loſt ſight of, he was never ſeen or heard of more.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Woods. Glades, or Savannahs. Licks. Hunters. Wild Horſes. Peculiar Sentiments of an European, on his Arrival in America.

HERE, during my ſlow recovery from this dangerous indiſpoſition, I began to accuſtom myſelf to walk, or ride, little diſtances alone in the woods. When I firſt attempted it, I was ſure to get bewildered and loſt, every time; which indeed one cannot avoid, until habituated to attend to the ſun, the trees, and the water-courſes. But it requires the experience of ſeveral years, to become a good and experienced wood's-man.

I obſerved here, in different places in the woods, ſome conſiderable glades, ſavannahs, or meadows. Theſe are natural openings, of a few acres in extent, quite deſtitute of timber, not a tree, nor even the veſtige of one, to be perceived in them; but

but the ground therein is always covered with abundance of excellent long grafs.

Such meadows are generally to be found near the head fpring, or fource of fmall branches of running water, and are as uncommon in America, as an equal extent of natural woods, and large, ftately, lofty trees are in Europe.

Throughout this inland country, one frequently hears of places called Licks; which appellation, being unintellgible to any but the inhabitants, I fhall embrace this opportunity to explain.

Licks are particular places, moft commonly on the banks of rivers, or creeks, and fometimes at fpring-heads, where the clay or earth is impregnated with faline particles.

Thefe places are frequented by deer, elks, buffaloes, horned cattle, and horfes, which daily refort to them, to lick the earth or clay with their tongues; this they perform with a peculiar relifh and gout, and appear to take great delight therein, coming there, for that purpofe, from the diftance of many miles around.

There is likewiſe another kind of licks here beſides. Theſe are alſo on the banks of rivers, lakes, ſtreams of water, or large ravines and chaſms, and conſiſt of chalk, or calcarious earth, of a teſtaceous quality, which is greedily licked up and conſumed by all thoſe different animals I have already mentioned in the deſcription of the former of theſe places.

To the uſe of this latter kind they are prompted by nature and inſtinct, for ſalutary and medicinal purpoſes, to correct the acidity of the ſuper-abundant vegetative juices accumulated in the ſtomach, which would otherwiſe occaſion ſevere gripings, ſtrictures of the bowels, and many other painful diſorders.

All theſe licks are generally frequented by hunters with their rifles, at the dawn of day, or on bright moon-ſhine nights, who, by this means, ſeldom fail of killing ſome of the deer, elks, or buffaloes, that reſort to them at ſuch private times, for the greater ſecurity.

Theſe places, however, are only to be found or heard of in the back country, and are generally very conſiderable diſtances aſunder, ſome ten, twenty, and thirty miles.

All the inhabitants throughout America, that are diſtant from the ſea, or ſalt-water, give their cattle and horſes ſalt, ſometimes once, ſometimes twice a week; which is not only to promote their increaſe of fleſh, but to render them gentle and tame, and to allure them to come often to their owner's plantations; elſe, in the mild ſouthern climate, where there is no occaſion to provide a ſtock of provender for them againſt the winter, they would otherwiſe run wild, and roam far beyond the reach of their proprietors, through this immenſe and unbounded foreſt.

Indeed, notwithſtanding every precaution, very great numbers of black cattle, horſes, and hogs actually do ſo daily, and run at large, entirely wild, without

any

any other proprietors than thoſe of the ground they happen to be found upon.

In ſome parts, each perſon, in poſſeſſion of a plantation, has what is called a right in the woods; by which he is entitled to the property of a certain proportion of the live ſtock that runs wild, ſuch as I juſt deſcribed.

This right they diſpoſe of, and transfer from party to party, in the ſame manner as affixed property.

And when they want to catch ſome colts, to render them tame and ſerviceable, it is an undertaking of no ſmall difficulty to accompliſh.

Throughout the middle and back ſettlements of America, there is no other criterion to aſcertain the property of black cattle, ſheep, and hogs, but ear-marks alone; and of horſes, than brands with red hot irons, and ear-marks alſo.

Each perſon's mark differs from another; and they are all ſeverally recorded by the clerk of the county-courts wherein they reſide.

This

This is ſupported by the authority of the legiſlature, who have decreed it felony to alter or deface thoſe marks or inſignia of property.

There is an obſervation very remarkable, which occurred to me, and as I ſuppoſe to every European on his arrival in America, but I preſume never thought on by any native. It is an idea of reſtraint, or a want of free open air, and an extenſion of view, occaſioned by the appearance of confinement, and the perſpective being always bounded by the ſurrounding woods, which perpetually limit the ſight within narrower compaſs than the mind requires; beſides an univerſal gloomy ſhade, rendered diſmal by the intermixing branches of the lofty trees, which over-ſpread the whole country, and the ſun never pervades.

This occaſioned a ſenſation rather painful to me for a conſiderable time, which, however, gradually wore off, until I could only juſt recollect the idea.

I acknowledge indeed never to have heard this obſervation mentioned by any one whomſoever; but as it ſtruck me moſt forcibly, I have therefore every reaſon to believe that others have likewiſe perceived, at firſt, the ſame kind of ſenſations, if they began to travel ſoon after their arrival in this part of America.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Appearance of the Country. Diſeaſes of the Climate. Snakes. Game. Raccoons. Deſcription of the Oppoſſum. Beer made of Perſimmons. Cheapneſs of Land. Delightful Climate. Stanzas written in Solitude.

THE face of the country, ever ſince I left Mr. Eaton's, has been gradually ſwelling more and more into hills and dales, which are here called bottoms, as I advanced weſtward; and the land is likewiſe more mixed with ſtones, which alſo continue to increaſe in magnitude.

The ſoil is a compoſition of reddiſh clay and loam, ſtrong and fertile; the woods leſs intermingled with pines, and more with oak and hickory; and the water every where excellent, running in vaſt multitudes of beautiful clear ſtreams.

The country and climate is in general healthy, the low grounds of the rivers alone otherwiſe, particularly thoſe of the Roanoak, occaſioned by exhalations ariſing from the damp ſoil, ſtagnated wa-

ters, and by the putrefcence of the air, whofe free circulation is prevented, in fuch fituations, by lofty thick woods, impervious to the brighteft beams of the fun, under which a difmal gloom and infalubrious moifture eternally reigns.

The inhabitants of thefe places, and their neareft vicinity, are fubject to obftinate intermittents; thefe, and bilious complaints, being the chief and moft prevailing endemial difeafes throughout this country.

There are likewife great numbers of all kinds of ferpents in thefe fituations, particularly that moft poifonous and dreadful of all, the rattle-fnake; and the more filent and dangerous moccoffons alfo abound, efpecially in and near the fwamps, guts, and rivers, but are not met with fo frequently.

Game is very plenty here, particularly deer, beavers, otters, raccoons, and that very extraordinary animal the oppoffum, the female of which has a double, or falfe belly: within it the young ones grow

grow to the teats, like fruit to the ſtalk, and drop off at a certain period.

After ſhe has brought forth her young, during the ſeaſon of their infancy, whenever they perceive danger nigh, they all run into the mother's bag, or falſe belly, for ſecurity and refuge.

Both theſe and the raccoons are uſed for food, generally barbicued, or roaſted, and their fleſh is not unpleaſant.

There are alſo ſome wolves, and multitudes of foxes, wild turkies very large fat and fine, wild-geeſe, ducks, and ſquirrels innumerable, which make moſt excellent ſoup; alſo wood-peckers and jays of ſeveral different kinds; beſides a vaſt variety of other animals, birds, beaſts, &c. too many even to enumerate.

Great numbers of trees in the woods, eſpecially in the low grounds, are covered with vines, and bend under the weight of the ripe grapes, which are ſuſpended in accumulated multitudes of large and delicious cluſters.

There is alſo a remarkable fruit named the perſimmon, growing wild, about as large as the biggeſt Orleans plum, of a bright ſcarlet colour, with four or five very hard ſeeds in each, nearly of the ſize and ſhape of thoſe of tamarinds, and the pulp of the fruit, when perfectly ripe, is of a ſharp, but luſcious ſweetneſs.

As other fruits are ripened by the ſun, ſo the perſimmon is by the froſt in conjunction with it; for although beautiful and tempting to the eye, they cannot be eaten, and ſcarcely even taſted, before they are maturated, or meliorated, by ſeveral ſharp froſts, previous to which they are auſtere, rough, and aſtringent, to a greater degree than any other vegetative ſubſtance, or production, whatſoever.

All animals are exceſſively fond of this fruit, particularly the oppoſſums and raccoons, who are generally found on, or near the perſimmon-trees. Theſe trees are as large as oaks, elms, or aſh, and are

are distinctly divided into male and female, the male never bearing fruit.

In some places, where apples and cyder are scarce, the inhabitants gather the persimmons, after they are perfectly ripe, knead them into a kind of dough, or paste, with wheat bran, which they form into loaves, and bake in ovens: of these they brew a fermented liquor, which is called persimmon beer. This serves for their common drink, and is tolerably pleasant and wholesome. It is sometimes, though rarely, distilled into brandy.

These trees grow chiefly in or near about the edges of glades, savannahs, and in old fields, as they term such places where the timber has been cut down, the land worn out, impoverished, or tired with culture, and young trees have not sprung up; for the persimmon is found to thrive in the poorest soil, almost as well as in the most fertile.

Throughout this back country, there are so many rich and valuable tracts of land frequently to be disposed of, for

conſiderations infinitely inferior to their real worth, that a man of reflection, even a traveller, cannot always withſtand the temptation.

Here I have evinced the truth of this obſervation for the ſecond time, having made a purchaſe of a ſurvey, containing four hundred and fifty acres of excellent land, adjoining Flat river, with a cleared plantation, and a houſe upon it, for only one hundred pounds ſterling.

The firſt purchaſe I made was on the banks of the Roanoak, nine miles above Eaton's ferry; it conſiſted of five hundred and fifty acres, of which about one hundred was in Virginia, moſtly low grounds, and the reſt in North Carolina, the dividing frontier line interſecting the land. On this there is a plantation, houſes, orchards, &c. and a public ferry.

The ſmall part of this tract that lies in Virginia coſt me two hundred pounds, although I gave but fifty pounds more for all the reſt of the ſurvey that is on the North

North Carolina ſide of the frontier line, being four hundred and fifty acres.

On this plantation I ſettled an overſeer, with a few negroes, and ſtock; and committed the whole to the care of my friend, Mr. Alexander, with whom I regularly correſponded.

But with this laſt purchaſe I was not ſo well ſatisfied, for when I reflected on the ſituation of it, I found it muſt be an incumbrance, being ſo far inland, and ſo far diſtant from navigation, that there was but a ſlender proſpect of my reaping any benefit thereby.

This conſideration induced me to offer it again for ſale, and in the diſpoſal thereof, I was more fortunate than I had any reaſon to apprehend, having ſold it for fifty pounds more than it coſt me, to a planter, who had juſt removed out to this place with his family, from the interior part of Virginia, and intended to make ſome more purchaſes of adjacent tracts that were quite contiguous to this, and thereby, very opportunely to me, enhanced its value.

The

The winter, if you may call ſo the fineſt time of the year, is in this part of the continent more pleaſant and agreeable than can be conceived; neither ſo hot as to incommode, nor ſo cold as to diſpleaſe; but is conſtantly a ſeries of the moſt delightful weather imaginable: ever clear, bright, and ſerene, the face of nature is perpetually ſmiling.

As a ſpecimen of the ſentiments which this loneſome, recluſe ſituation inſpires, the following ſtanzas, or ode, may not be unacceptable, which claim no farther merit than evincing the natural bias of the human mind to philanthropy and benevolence, when detached from the general intercourſe of poliſhed ſociety, and diveſted of the diſguiſe and incumbrances of modern company and refinement.

It was addreſſed to Robert Alexander, eſq. colonel of the militia of the county of Mecklenburg, in Virginia, the gentleman whom I have already mentioned.

STAN-

STANZAS;

Or, an ODE to a FRIEND.

I.

Whilſt my friend is improving his fortune and mind,
On the banks of the rapid Roanoak;
Here to ſilence and ſolitude am I confin'd,
Like a bird juſt eſcap'd from the hawk*.

II.

While merchants are ſcheming and toiling for gains,
Uſing means that are honeſt, or vile;
Whilſt narrow-ſoul'd miſers are racking their brains,
To heap up more gold, and more guile.

III.

Whilſt orators proſtitute talents for fee,
And juſtice gives way to the caſh;
Whilſt the virtuous, the poor are reſpected by me,
And rich raſcals ſmart under my laſh.

IV.

While doctors ſell health, by the grain, in retail,
And barter off death by the lump;
Whilſt int'reſt and power againſt merit prevail,
And honour's lopt low to the ſtump.

* The author being then juſt recovering from a moſt ſevere illneſs.

V. In

V.

In obſcurity ſtill 'tis my wiſh to remain,
Since neglected, forſaken, retir'd;
For riches and ſplendour, with guile, I diſdain,
Nor by me are high titles deſir'd.

VI.

Contentment alone do I covet in life,
And friendſhip with you to enjoy;
This adds to our pleaſure, and baniſhes ſtrife,
And wiſely our days we'll employ.

VII.

Reviewing paſt time, 'tis with rapture we find,
That at length we've diſcover'd the right,
Rude, noiſy enjoyments expel'd from our mind,
Each ſcene now ſerene is, and bright.

VIII.

Our aſſociates in former tumultuous life,
With grief, we ſee ruſhing along;
Contending, with eager exertion and ſtrife,
To excel in the culpable throng.

IX.

Let the Muſe their deformities glaringly ſhow,
And Vice in her colours diſplay;
Awak'ning reflection will urge them to know,
They, like butterflies, blaze but a day.

X. In

X.

In all the gay flutter of faſhion and dreſs,
They approach me,—expecting my praiſe;
Since, like them, abandon'd to ev'ry exceſs,—
Let them liſten, with heed, to my lays.

XI.

" For once then to truth and good-humour deſcend,
" Nor wax thus ill-natur'dly warm;
" But bear with the cordial advice of a friend
" Who can bluſh for himſelf, and reform.

XII.

" Too long, my dear Sirs, have you madly deny'd
" A rational uſe to your eyes;
" And look'd on thoſe actions with envy and pride,
" Which reflection muſt hate and deſpiſe,

XIII.

" In praiſe of the fatal exceſſes of wine,
" Diſdain to be ſeen with a pen;
" Nor boaſt of being rais'd into ſomething divine,
" When debas'd greatly lower than men.

XIV.

" Where murder for honour is ſhamefully dreſt,
" O never attempt to defend;
" Nor plunge the fell ſword, for a caſual jeſt,
" In the breaſt of your worthieſt friend.

XV. To

XV.

" To a laugh never martyr an innocent name,
" 'Tis a malice moſt cruelly cool;
" Nor plunge the ſoft virgin in anguiſh and ſhame,
" For the loudeſt applauſe of a fool.

XVI.

" When fatally fond the ſweet victim is grown,
" In pity, in juſtice, forbear;
" And think that a ſiſter, or child of your own,
" May be drawn to diſgrace and deſpair.

XVII.

" But let merit, where'er it may chance to engage,
" Oblige you to praiſe and protect;
" And the ſilver-white ringlets of reverend age,
" Still meet with a decent reſpect.

XVIII.

" Such conduct will add to your happineſs more
" Than all your miſtaken purſuits;
" Give zeſt to your pleaſures, and weight to your ſtore,
" Diſtinguiſhing reaſon from brutes."

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Newſe-River. Hillſborough. Strong Poſt. Haw Fields. Singular Phenomenon. Accounted for.

THE laſt two conſiderable ſtreams of water that I croſſed on my way to this place, Fiſhing-creek and Tar-river, receiving ſeveral inferior creeks and branches in their courſe, from a tolerable large river, which paſſing by Tarburg, falls into the immenſe body of water, that is known by the appellation of Pamplico ſound, at Bath town, after a courſe of about an hundred and fifty miles, in a direct line, from the ſource.

It was in February when I left this place, and again proceeded on my journey.

At the end of two miles, I croſſed Flat river, and in two miles farther, Little river; theſe, with another river (the Eno) within a couple of miles more, meet ſome ſmall diſtance below, and form the river Newſe.

Each of theſe ſmall rivers, is larger than the Thames at Richmond, and the Newſe is not much inferior to the Roanoak.

After

After a courſe of more than three hundred miles, it empties itſelf in Pamplico ſound, about thirty miles below the town of Newbern, which is ſometimes called, and lately eſtabliſhed as the capital of North-Carolina.

This town is ſituated in a very beautiful ſpot, on the banks of the Newſe, at the confluence of a pretty ſtream, named Trent river.

After a ride of twenty-two miles, I arrived at Hillſborough, where I dined and paſſed the reſt of the day.

This is the third appellation this town has already been honoured with ſince it was erected, being firſt named Corben-town, next Childſburg, now Hillſborough; all in leſs than thirty years.

It is alſo the capital of a diſtrict, and the county-town of Orange.

Hillſborough is a healthy ſpot, enjoys a good ſhare of commerce for an inland town, and is in a very promiſing ſtate of improvement.

The land, for ſome diſtance around Hillſborough, conſiſts of a mixture of loam and ſtrong red clay of ſo bright a colour that white horſes and cattle, ſoon after they are brought there, become in appearance a fine ſcarlet.

In the vicinity of Hillſborough, and to the weſtward of it, there are a great many very fine farms, and a number of excellent mills.

The inhabitants are chiefly natives of Ireland and Germany, but of the very loweſt and moſt ignorant claſs, who export large quantities of exceeding good butter and flour, in waggons, to Halifax, Peterſburg, &c. beſides multitudes of fat cattle, beeves, and hogs.

There is a very ſteep and high hill, or ſmall mountain, with two ſummits of an equal height, on the ſouth-weſt of Hillſborough, which ariſes abruptly in the middle of an extenſive plain, and commands the whole country for a great diſtance around.

This might eaſily be rendered a very ſtrong poſt, by works thrown up on the ſummits, which are near enough to cover and ſupport each other, and ſo ſituated, as the communication between them could not be interrupted. The flanks and rear likewiſe would be ſtrengthened by the river Eno, which runs at the baſe of this mountain, and waſhes two ſides of it.

The ſtaple produce of all this country being proviſions of every kind, a fortified poſt in this place, would thereby be enabled to ſubſiſt and maintain itſelf in every neceſſary ſupply, excepting arms and ammunition, and might be defended, by a ſmall force, againſt a very conſiderable and ſuperior army.

Almoſt every man in this country has been the fabricator of his own fortune, and many of them are very opulent.

Some have obtained their riches by commerce, others by the practice of the law, which in this province is peculiarly lucrative, and extremely oppreſſive; but moſt of them

them have acquired their poſſeſſions by cropping, farming, and induſtry.

I dined next day, by invitation, at the houſe of Mr. Frank Naſh.

[Since then it has happened, in the viciſſitudes of fortune, that Mr. Naſh and the author were engaged in battle on different ſides; Mr. Naſh as a General in the American army, and the author a Captain in the Britiſh, at the action of German-Town, near Philadelphia, where Mr. Naſh received his mortal wound.]

Here, at Mr. Naſh's, I happened to meet a Mr. Mabin (a native of Ireland) who very kindly inſiſted on my accompanying him to his ſeat on Haw river, adjoining the Haw fields, to ſpend ſome weeks there.

Having a great deſire to view the Haw fields, a place I had heard much about, I went along with him to his plantation, which is about an eaſy day's ride, weſt of Hillſborough.

Mr. Mabin's farm is very valuable and extenſive, but not particularly remarkable.

I rode ſeveral times over the Haw fields, but could not perceive any thing in them extraordinary.

They conſiſt partly of wide ſavannahs, or glades, and partly of large fields overgrown with ſhrubs, bruſh, and low under-wood, entirely deſtitute of heavy timber. But there appears many veſtiges of trees, which in all probability have been blown down by a hurricane, and the young ſhoots afterwards choaked by the extreme thickneſs of the low buſhes, and ſcrubby underwood. This I have alſo obſerved to be the caſe in many other places beſides.

From the effect of theſe moſt violent and tremendous hurricanes and tornadoes, which being ſometimes partial, frequently move in ſtrange fantaſtic directions, and from the irreſiſtible force of the wind, and the vaſt deluges and innundations of water that generally accompany them, all the appearances may be readily

ac-

accounted for in a common and natural way, which, however, have lately given ſcope to an ingenious, celebrated, and elegant author's (Dr. Dunbar) and others of leſs note (Mr. Carver, &c.) vague imaginations; hazarding their fanciful and wild conjectures of ſome of theſe being veſtiges of military works, erected many ages paſt, by a people *then* converſant in that ſcience, but whoſe deſcendants, *by the mere dint of practice*, (for war and hunting appear from the moſt early period of time to have been the ſole ſtudy and occupation of their lives,) and by ſome other equally abſurd and unaccountable tranſitions, have thereby forgotten, and, *at this day*, have loſt every trace thereof.

Indeed it muſt be confeſſed, that the elephant's bones, or thoſe of ſome other unknown animal of vaſt magnitude, found on the banks of the river Ohio, the antique ſculptures in the Delaware's country, on the north-weſt ſide of that amazing river, the ſhells and marine ſubſtances in the Alegany mountains,

together with many other ſtrange appearances and ſingular phenomena, ſo frequently to be met with throughout this moſt extenſive continent, diſplay a fertile field for a creative, fanciful genius to explore, and may give riſe to the moſt novel, elegant, and beautiful flights of imagination, and the brighteſt, moſt ingenious, and ſplendid embelliſhments of fiction.

However, I have reaſon to believe, that ſome of the Haw fields have been cleared of woods by the Indians, in ages paſt, who were undoubtedly ſettled here; many inſignia, and veſtiges of the remains of their towns, ſtill remaining.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Haw river. Deep river. Cape Fear river. Carroway mountains. Grand and elegant Perſpective. Bad Accommodations. Unſuitable to an Epicure, or a Petit Maître.

HAVING it in ſpeculation to viſit Henderſon's ſettlement on Kentucky, I mentioned my intention to Mr. Mabin, who appeared very ſtrenuous in diſſuading me from undertaking ſuch an enterprize at preſent, on account of the miſunderſtanding and diſturbances now ſubſiſting between the Indians and the Whites.

He informed me of a report, that even Henderſon's whole ſettlement was either exterminated, or in imminent danger of being ſo.

For this reaſon, I concluded to poſtpone this arduous undertaking, until ſuch time as more certain and favourable intelligence of their ſituation in the ſettlement ſhould arrive, and a better proſpect of reaching it without moleſtation.

On the third evening after I came here, a gentleman, named Frohawk, called at Mr. Mabin's, on his return to Saliſbury, where he reſided.

As he tarried all night, we had much converſation, and from his accounts of the Catawba Indians, my curioſity was ſtrongly excited to viſit their nation, which was only about an hundred miles beyond the town of Saliſbury.

Accordingly, having expreſſed my deſire and intention to Mr. Frohawk, he was ſo obliging as to propoſe to conduct and accompany me; an opportunity and eligible offer, which I with great ſatisfaction embraced, and ſet out along with him next morning.

The road we travelled in is named the Great Trading Path, and leads through Hillſborough, Saliſbury, &c. to the Catawba towns, and from thence to the Cherokee nation of Indians, a conſiderable diſtance weſtward.

We forded the Haw river, which is there about twice as broad as the Thames

at

at Putney, and within a few miles farther, in the like manner, we croſſed Reedy river, another branch of the ſame ſtream, and as large.

We dined juſt by a Quaker's meeting-houſe, and in the afternoon croſſed Deep river, at a ford. This is alſo about twice as wide as the Thames at Putney, and joins the Haw river ſome diſtance below, after waſhing the baſe of the north-eaſt ſide of a ridge or chain of high hills, named the Carroway mountains.

The Haw is then a large river, and runs through the ſettlement and town of Croſs creek, which is chiefly inhabited by Scots emigrants from the weſtern Highlands and the Hebrides*: it then aſſumes a new appellation, being called the North-weſt, or Cape Fear river, and paſſing by the town of Wilmington, which has been frequently conſidered as the metropolis of

* For an account of the unhappy fate of this loyal and patriotic ſettlement, on account of their attachment to their King and Country, ſee Chap. xxxi.

North-

North-Carolina, on the north-eaſt, and Brunſwick, which is a little lower on the weſtern bank of the river, it falls into the Atlantic ocean at Cape Fear, after a courſe of more than three hundred miles from the ſource.

We lodged that night at an inn or ordinary, as it is called here, at the foot of the Carroway mountains, which we had frequently had a glimpſe of, during this day's ride.

We purſued our journey early on the following morning, which was extremely pleaſant and fine; and when we arrived at the ſummit of the mountain, the ſun juſt began to verge above the horizon.

Here I alighted, and indulged myſelf in gazing with great delight on the wild and extenſive proſpect around me.

On the north-eaſt I beheld the mountains at Hillſborough, diſtant above fifty miles; on the ſouth-weſt, the mountains near Saliſbury; and on the weſt, Tryon mountains; with the wide extended foreſt below, embrowned with thick woods, and inter-

interfected with dark, winding, narrow chafms, which marked out the courfe of the different mighty ftreams that meandered through this enormous vale; thinly interfperfed on the banks of which, the farms and plantations appeared like as many infignificant fpots, that, while they pointed out the induftry, ferved alfo to expofe the littlenefs of man.

On this fpot I could with pleafure have paffed the day, had not a craving, keen appetite reminded us, that there are more gratifications neceffary for our fupport, than feafting our eyes; fo we defcended the mountain, and purfued our journey.

It was fortunate for me, that at this time, my conftitution, health, and tafte, enabled me to fubfift on any kind of food, without repining, and with fufficient fatisfaction, however coarfe or unufual it might be. For this is not an enterprife for an epicure, or a petit maître: the apprehenfions of perifhing with hunger and want, would as effectually deter the one from fuch an

an undertaking, as the dread of abſolutely expiring with fatigue and hardſhips, would the other; the fare and accommodations a traveller meets with throughout this country, being very indifferent indeed, even at beſt, and generally miſerable and wretched beyond deſcription, excepting at warm or opulent planters houſes, where there is always a profuſion of every thing, but in the coarſeſt and plaineſt ſtyle.

The greater number of thoſe who travel through this country, have acquaintances among the inhabitants, at whoſe houſes they generally put up every night, and ſeldom call at ordinaries.

Thoſe that drive and accompany waggons on a journey, ſleep in the woods every night under a tree, upon dry leaves on the ground, with their feet towards a large fire, which they make by the road ſide, wherever night happens to overtake them, and are covered only with a blanket. Their horſes are turned looſe in the woods, only with leather ſpancills or fetters

ters on two of their legs, and each with a bell fastened by a collar round his neck, by which they are readily found in the morning. Provisions and provender, both for men and horses, are carried along with them, in the waggon, sufficient for the whole journey.

Even these advantages, trifling as they may appear, a traveller on horseback is destitute of, and is obliged to trust to Providence, and the country through which he passes, for accommodation and subsistence; both of which are not always to be met with, and even when they are, are seldom as good, never better than the waggoners.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Yadkin River. Saliſbury. Beautiful Perſpective. Tryon Mountain. Bruſhy Mountains. The King Mountain diſtinguiſhed for the unhappy Fate of the gallant Major Ferguſon.

LATE in the afternoon we croſſed the river Yadkin, at a ford, ſix or ſeven miles beyond which is the town of Saliſbury, where we arrived that evening, being about one hundred and twenty miles weſt-ſouth-weſt from Hillſborough.

The Yadkin is a very large ſtream of water, at leaſt three times as wide as the Thames at Putney: it runs through a rich and extenſive country, enters South Carolina, paſſing through the Chawraws, having a vaſt body of low grounds and rich rice and indigo lands on each ſide, before which it aſſumes the name of Great Peedee, and falls into the Atlantic Ocean a few miles below George-Town, which ſtands on the weſt ſide of a bay

a bay named Winyaw, formed within the mouth of this river, receiving a great many inferior ſtreams in its courſe, which is remarkably crooked, being above five hundred miles along with its meanders, and more than four hundred miles, in a direct line, from its ſource.

Saliſbury is the capital of a diſtrict, and is the county town of Roan: it is ſituated on a ſmall creek that runs into the Yadkin on the ſouth-weſt ſide.

This town is larger than Hillſborough, and leſs than Halifax; but does not ſhare an equal degree of commerce with the leaſt of them.

The trade from Saliſbury is pretty exactly divided between the towns on James River in Virginia, and Charles Town in South Carolina.

There is a beautiful romantic mountain a few miles due ſouth from Saliſbury, which being ſeen from the town produces a very fine effect, as the Carroway mountains do alſo, the tops of which are likewiſe to be perceived.

I went

I went to the ſummit of this delightful mountain, on the brow neareſt to the town, and from thence beheld a perſpective, beautiful, extenſive, and grand, as I always do ſuch a ſcene, with ſuperior pleaſure.

On the north-eaſt I obſerved the Carroway mountains; on the north-weſt, at fifty miles diſtance, the Bruſhy Mountains, the Montague Hills, and the King's Mountain on the weſt.

[It was on this mountain that gallant officer and excellent partizan, Major Ferguſon, of the Britiſh army, and his whole detachment, were cut off, and killed by a vaſt ſuperiority of the rebels, in November 1780; by which misfortune this place has unhappily become diſtinguiſhed.]

On the ſouth and eaſt I beheld an unbounded plain; and the whole an immenſe foreſt, without limits, interſperſed with vaſt water-courſes, and thinly ſpotted with ſettlements.

Mr.

Mr. Frohawk being prevented by an unforeſeen accident from accompanying me to the Catawba nation, I ſet out alone, and after a fatiguing ride of ſixty miles, arrived at a little town, named Charlotteſburg, at night; having forded ſeveral water-courſes during the day, which form Rocky River, a branch of the Yadkin.

Charlotteſburg is an inconſiderable place, and in England would not be thought deſerving of even the name of a village. It ſtands upon a creek that runs into the Catawba River, is not a county town, and its trade and ſhare of commerce is very inſignificant.

During this day's ride, I obſerved that the ſettlements are fewer, the plantations ſmaller, and the land, in appearance, leſs fertile, than on the other ſide of Saliſbury.

CHAP. XXIII.

Blazed Path. Origin and Uſe thereof. Deſcription of a Back Wood's Rifleman. His ſtrange Dreſs and peculiar Sentiments..

THROUGHOUT all this country, and in every back ſettlement in America, the roads and paths are firſt marked out by blazes on the trees, cut alternately on each ſide of the way, every thirty or forty yards: theſe are renewed every time the roads are repaired.

A blaze is a large chip ſliced off the ſide of a tree with an axe; it is above twelve inches in length, cut through the bark and ſome of the ſap wood, and by its white appearance, and brightneſs, when freſh made, ſerves to direct the way in the night as well as in the day.

The miles are chiefly computed, and are aſcertained by notches chopped in the neareſt tree; a notch for every mile.

The firſt blazed paths originated in this manner: when any perſon went from one

one place to another through the woods, where it would have been difficult, if not impoſſible, to return upon his track, he fell upon this method of blazing each ſide of the trees, at certain diſtances, as he paſſed on, and thereby retraced his way in returning, without the leaſt trouble.

The convenience and ſimplicity of this mode has rendered it univerſal throughout the whole back country.

It became the more readily adopted, as all who travel beyond the roads and beaten tracks, always have tomahawks in their belts; which, in ſuch ſituations and circumſtances, are more uſeful than any thing, except the rifle-barreled firelocks; both of which all the male inhabitants habituate themſelves conſtantly to carry along with them every where.

Their whole dreſs is alſo very ſingular, and not very materially different from that of the Indians; being a hunting ſhirt, ſomewhat reſembling a waggoner's frock, ornamented with a great many fringes, tied round the middle with a

broad belt, much decorated alſo, in which is faſtened a tomahawk, an inſtrument that ſerves every purpoſe of defence and convenience; being a hammer at one ſide and a ſharp hatchet at the other; the ſhot bag and powder-horn, carved with a variety of whimſical figures and devices, hang from their necks over one ſhoulder; and on their heads a flapped hat, of a reddiſh hue, proceeding from the intenſely hot beams of the ſun.

Sometimes they wear leather breeches, made of Indian dreſſed elk, or deer ſkins, but more frequently thin trowſers.

On their legs they have Indian boots, or leggings, made of coarſe woollen cloth, that either are wrapped round looſely and tied with garters, or are laced upon the outſide, and always come better than half way up the thigh: theſe are a great defence and preſervative, not only againſt the bite of ſerpents and poiſonous inſects, but likewiſe againſt the ſcratches of thorns, briars, ſcrubby buſhes, and under-

underwood, with which this whole country is infeſted and overſpread.

On their feet they ſometimes wear pumps of their own manufacture, but generally Indian moccoſſons, of their own conſtruction alſo, which are made of ſtrong elk's, or buck's ſkin, dreſſed ſoft as for gloves or breeches, drawn together in regular plaits over the toe, and lacing from thence round to the fore part of the middle of the ancle, without a ſeam in them, yet fitting cloſe to the feet, and are indeed perfectly eaſy and pliant.

Thus habited and accoutered, with his rifle upon his ſhoulder, or in his hand, a back-wood's man is completely equipped for viſiting, courtſhip, travel, hunting, or war.

And according to the number and variety of the fringes on his hunting ſhirt, and the decorations on his powder-horn, belt, and rifle, he eſtimates his finery, and abſolutely conceives himſelf of equal conſequence, more civilized, polite, and more elegantly dreſſed than the moſt bril-

liant peer at St. James's, in a ſplendid and expenſive birth-day ſuit, of the firſt faſhion and taſte, and moſt coſtly materials.

Their hunting, or rifle ſhirts, they have alſo died in variety of colours, ſome yellow, others red, ſome brown, and many wear them quite white.

Such ſentiments as thoſe I have juſt expoſed to notice, are neither ſo ridiculous nor ſurpriſing, when the circumſtances are conſidered with due attention, that prompt the back-wood's American to ſuch a train of thinking, and in which light it is, that he feels his own conſequence, for he finds all his reſources in himſelf.

Thus attired and accoutered, as already deſcribed, ſet him in the midſt of a boundleſs foreſt, a thouſand miles from an inhabitant, he is by no means at a loſs, nor in the ſmalleſt degree diſmayed.

With his rifle he procures his ſubſiſtence; with his tomahawk he erects his ſhelter,

ſhelter, his wigwam, his houſe, or whatever habitation he may chuſe to reſide in; he drinks at the cryſtal ſpring, or the neareſt brook; his wants are all eaſily ſupplied, he is contented, he is happy. For felicity, beyond a doubt, conſiſts, in a great meaſure, in the attainment and gratification of our deſires, and the accompliſhment of the utmoſt bounds of our wiſhes.

This digreſſion, which I thought neceſſary to impreſs an idea of the ſingular appearance and ſentiments of theſe men, for that reaſon, I am hopeful, will be excuſed; and for which, I flatter myſelf, this will be deemed a ſufficient apology.

CHAP. XXIV.

Catawba Indians. The King. Once a powerful Nation. Cuſtoms. Depopulation. Cauſes thereof. Manner of Life. Abortions of the young Women.

ON the morning following I purſued my journey to the Catawba towns, which are between thirty and forty miles diſtant from Charlotteſburg.

Having hired a perſon at Charlotteſburg, who was well acquainted in the nation, and converſant in their language and cuſtoms, to ſerve as my guide, and interpreter, if there ſhould be occaſion, we arrived at the nation that evening.

Our horſes were turned out looſe, and we lodged in a wigwam belonging to a family of theſe Indians, in which my guide was very intimate.

My bed was a large bear's ſkin, with a blanket to cover me, and I ſlept on the ground, before the fire. Being very much fatigued, I reſted tolerably well, and in the

the morning I aroſe early, as uſual, and walked out to view the town.

This day I had the honour of being introduced to the king, or chief of the Catawba nation, whoſe hard-mouthed Indian appellation I cannot recollect, but his Engliſh name was Joe.

He appeared to be a ſtrong, ſtraight, well-looking, robuſt fellow, little or no way diſtinguiſhable from the reſt, otherwiſe than in the accidental gifts of his perſon; for he ſeemed to me the likelieſt, beſt made, and handſomeſt man in the nation.

I was not a little ſurpriſed to find that they all ſpoke Engliſh very intelligibly; and they informed me that they underſtand, and pronounce it as well as their own language.

This once numerous, powerful, and even lately very reſpectable nation, is now dwindled away almoſt to nothing, there being at this time no more than ſixty or ſeventy warriors in the whole, and ſuch they are, as would excite the deriſion

and

and contempt of the more weſtern ſavages, for theſe are in a kind of ſtate of civilization, which the Indians conſider as enervating effeminacy, and hold it in the utmoſt abhorrence.

The Catawbas afford a melancholy example, and ſtriking, but inſuperable proof, of the ruin and fatality brought on any Indian nation, by the intemperance and vicinity of the ſettlements of the whites.

This aſtoniſhing havoc and depopulation, which is indeed moſt alarming, grievous, and awful, and truly painful for humanity to reflect upon, has been occaſioned, in a great meaſure, by the introduction of the ſmall-pox and ſpirituous liquors.

Their injudicious treatment of that infectious malady, generally renders it fatal, for they make uſe of hot ſtimulating medicines to promote a moſt profuſe diaphoreſis, in the height of which, whilſt reeking with ſweat, and diſſolving in ſtreams of warm moiſture, they ruſh out into

into the open air, quite naked, and ſuddenly plunge into the deepeſt and coldeſt ſtream of running water that can be found, immerſing their whole body in the chilling flood.

It may well be ſuppoſed, that if their recovery was doubtful before, this renders it totally impoſſible; and the poor unfortunate victims fall ſacrifices to the moſt wretched ignorance and folly.

The deleterious effects of ſpirituous liquors are not leſs notorious and extenſive; for theſe unhappy wretches are one and all perfectly devoted to the immoderate uſe of them, when to be obtained by any means whatſoever in their power; and an univerſal inebriation conſtantly occaſions a moſt dreadful carnage, which all the perſuaſions and power of the women, invariably exerted for that laudable purpoſe, is never able to prevent.

Yet after the fatal paroxyſm of intoxication has ceaſed, no revenge is gratified, no reſentments are indulged by the rela-

relations and friends of the murdered, againſt the ſurvivor.

The brothers, the fathers, the ſons of the deceaſed, are perfectly reconciled to, and in the ſtricteſt harmony and friendſhip with thoſe that perpetrated the ſanguinary deed. All unite in exculpating the actors from intentional crime, throwing the whole blame and ſtigma of evil and guilt on the wicked and pernicious ſpirits that gave riſe to the whole.

Although every one execrates the abominable liquor, and appears to ſhow the deepeſt contrition for the dreadful ſcene of which that alone was the ſole cauſe, yet if they can procure as much more the very next night as will completely intoxicate them, they cannot reſiſt the temptation, even if they were aſſured of as much miſchief as before proceeding from it.

The women, therefore, as ſoon as they diſcover ſpirituous liquors in the houſe, hut, or wigwam, begin immediately to ſecrete

ſecrete and convey away every dangerous weapon and inſtrument of death.

The latent effects of theſe are not leſs prejudicial and deſtructive to population than thoſe more immediate and apparent. For the warrior neglects his hunting; the ſquaw neglects her agriculture; the mother neglects her children; ill health and diſeaſe ſucceed, which generally terminate in the final exit of the unhappy victims, by immerſion in the cold bath, while almoſt in a ſtate of liquefaction by heat and a moſt profuſe perſpiration.

The decreaſe and depopulation of the Indian nations is alſo promoted by another cauſe beſides theſe, which has contributed as powerfully as either of the former to that fatal purpoſe.

It is the frequent abortions of the young unmarried women: for they conſider a promiſcuous intercourſe between the ſexes before marriage as no diſgrace, nor does it prevent a girl from obtaining a huſband afterwards; but they are careful to deſtroy the fruits of this licentious

connection by medicinal ſimples that promote abortion, in which fatal ſcience they are very expert. It produces this pernicious effect, that ſuch practices in their early youth ſubject them to miſcarriages ever afterwards, and when it happens otherwiſe, they commonly have not more than two children, very ſeldom three, during the whole courſe of their lives.

However, although devotees to incontinence and the Cytherian rites while ſingle, yet after they marry they are remarkable for their fidelity to the objects of their choice, unleſs they ſhould happen to take a diſlike to each other; then they mutually agree on an immediate ſeparation, or divorce, and each party may marry again with any other perſon, without the ſmalleſt cenſure, or the leaſt idea of impropriety.

It is cuſtomary when a white man enters an Indian town, or nation, with intention of reſiding there for ſome time, if only a few months, for him to have

nave a wigwam, or hut, erected, in which he lives with ſome young ſquaw, whom he either courts to his embraces, or receives from her parents as his wife and ſervant, during the time he may ſtay among them.

In ſuch caſes ſhe is always very faithful and true, and if ſhe ſhould prove pregnant, the child is raiſed by the nation: but if ſhe be the daughter of one of their chiefs, and the father of the infant be inclined to fix his reſidence among them, he is preſented with a large tract of land, ſeveral miles ſquare, in truſt for the child; which, as well as himſelf, is then formally adopted and received into the nation.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Catawba's vaſt Property. Their Manufactures. Their Naſtineſs.

THE Catawbas are indeed a poor, inoffenſive, inſignificant people, enveloped in filth and naſtineſs of perſon, for no Indian has any idea of cleanneſs.

But they poſſeſs an extenſive and moſt valuable body of rich, fertile land, containing more than one hundred and fifty thouſand acres, which they hold in abſolute property and fee ſimple inheritance.

Should their depopulation continue as rapidly as it has been hitherto, in a very few years this enormous, immenſe eſtate will center in a ſingle family.

However, this eſtate, vaſt and immenſe as it is, is but a poor compenſation for the loſs of a whole province; for this nation formerly poſſeſſed, and were the actual proprietors of the greateſt part of North Carolina.

I am

I am told that there can be no certain determined judgment formed of the manners and appearance of the native, uncivilized, wild, weſtern Indians, from theſe, who ſeem indeed, in a great meaſure, to have loſt that martial independent ſpirit, for which that whole race of mankind have been ever diſtinguiſhed, and to be ſinking faſt into degeneracy and a ſtate of ſervility and dependence, inferior even to the moſt indigent of the whites.

The Indian women in general are called *Squaws*, and it is their buſineſs to cultivate the ſoil, as well as perform the common menial domeſtic ſervices; the ſole occupation of the men being war, hunting, fiſhing, fowling, and ſmoaking tobacco.

The only manufacture that I can diſcover among them is that of party-coloured little baſkets, table-mats, made of ſtraw, and chips, or ſplits of different coloured wood; and an ill-formed kind of a half-baked earthen ware.

Theſe inſignificant trifles are carried about by the ſquaws for ſale, and are purchaſed for the moſt worthleſs invaluable conſiderations.

Many of the Catawbas have affixed property of various kinds and deſcriptions, and ſome of their hunters diſpoſe of more than one hundred pounds value of deer-ſkins every year

Nothing can be more ſimple, ſubmiſſive, and obliging than the behaviour of every individual I met with in the Catawba nation, male and female: and there was only their habitual naſtineſs, coarſe fare, and rude accommodations that were any wiſe diſguſtful to me, during my reſidence among them.

However, theſe people ſeem to enjoy an ample ſhare of the moſt valuable of all human bleſſings, the moſt eſtimable of all tranſitory poſſeſſions, health, contentment, and felicity; their principal concern proceeding from the apprehenſions of the encroachments of the whites, of which all Indians are indeed,

with

with great reaſon, extremely jealous and watchful. For no extenſion of territory can gratify our inſatiable deſires, no bounds can limit our perpetual uſurpations, invaſions, and inroads on the undoubted and ſole property and domain of theſe comparatively defenceleſs and innocent race of aboriginal inhabitants.

[For a more particular account of the character and diſpoſition of the Indians, and of the name, ſituation, and ſtrength, or number of warriors, of each nation on the continent of North-America, ſee Chap. xliii. and xliv.]

CHAP. XXVI.

Catawba River. An uncommon Inſtance of Penury. Rich Miſer. Wretchedneſs and Miſery of his Slaves. Wateree River. Congarees River. Santee River. Their great Extent. Fertility of the Soil.

HAVING, in a few days, ſufficiently gratified my curioſity amongſt this ſinking and degenerating nation, I left the Catawbas, and ſet out on a journey to a very diſtinguiſhed place of trade, in South-Carolina, lately entitled Camden, the capital of a diſtrict of the ſame name, formerly called, and ſtill moſt univerſally known, by the appellation of the Pine-tree.

Having found my guide, or interpreter, uſeful to me as a ſervant, I continued to employ him to attend me, which ſeemed to afford him great ſatisfaction, although he was engaged for the ſmall wages of half-a-crown per day for himſelf and his horſe alſo. However, it muſt be acknowledged, we always lodged and fared alike.

The dividing line between North and South-Carolina, interſects the Catawba nation.

nation. The principal town, however, is in South-Carolina.

We ſet out from hence in the morning very early, and within the diſtance of about ſeven miles, croſſed the Catawba river, at a ford juſt above the confluence of a conſiderable rivulet that falls into it on the north-eaſt ſide named Twelve Mile creek, leaving the great road or trading path on our right, that leads weſt towards the Cherokee country, our courſe being almoſt due ſouth a little eaſterly; and during all this morning's ride hitherto, we have ſtill been upon the territory belonging to the Catawba nation.

The Catawba is a large and rapid river, containing an enormous quantity of water: it is about three hundred and fifty yards wide, and, although fordable, is deep, and runs in a rocky channel with great velocity.

This day we had a dreary ride, and miſerable accommodations; having breakfaſted on ſome rice and milk, which it was with much difficulty we could pro-

cure, and we dined wretchedly at an ordinary of the ſame ſtyle, on the banks of a rivulet, named Fiſhing creek, which we forded, as alſo Rocky creek, and lodged at night in a houſe, or rather a hovel, belonging to a Mr. D—, a private and penurious planter.

In this habitation, which had many ſtrong features of indigence, was only one room and one bed, which the proprietor himſelf occupied, but very benevolently afforded us (indeed with ſome degree of reluctance) the accommodation of a pallet on the floor; and after our fatiguing ride of more than fifty miles, even this was very acceptable.

However this houſe, or more properly ſhelter, appeared to me as another manſion of miſery, and ſtrongly recalled to my mind the poor overſeer's wretched habitation, where I lodged the firſt night after I left Peterſburg, in Virginia.

This ſolitary recluſe I alſo conſidered as a poor, diſconſolate, deſpiſed overſeer, in the employment of ſome opulent proprietor

prietor wallowing in the wealth and luxuries of Charles-town.

Fully poſſeſſed with this idea, which I had imbibed over-night from every penurious appearance, I walked out early in the morning to take a general view of the plantation and agriculture.

After ſtrolling about for a conſiderable time, without meeting a ſingle perſon to anſwer any interrogation, I happened to go into a large barn, where to my aſtoniſhment, there were near fifty negroes at work.

I aſked them to whom they belonged? They replied, to Mr. D—. Who is Mr. D—? Where does he live?—And to my great ſurpriſe, I found it was the poor penurious wretch on whoſe floor we had lodged, that was proprietor, not only of this eſtate, but of many other plantations, together with three or four hundred more half-ſtarved negroes beſides.

I departed from this place with a mixture of pity and contempt for the miſerable wretch, who, poſſeſſing ſuch a fortune, was incapable of uſing it as he ought, for

the purpoſes of benevolence, and the benefit of mankind.

But with my heart penetrated with pain and anguiſh, I commiſerated the fate of thoſe unhappy wretches his ſlaves, whowere not allowed even a ſufficiency of the coarſeſt common neceſſaries of life, in compenſation for the hard labour of their lives, by this griping ſon of penury, who alſo endeavoured to avert his ruin, and fulfilled his conſiſtency, by ſending us away without breakfaſt.

After an unpleaſant ride of better than twenty-five miles, and croſſing the river Wateree (which is a continuance of the Catawba) in a ferry-boat, I arrived at Camden, or the Pine-tree, about noon.

This river, the Catawba, aſſumes three ſeveral appellations, but in different places. The upper part is named the Catawba, the middle is the Wateree, which appellation is continued to it as far as the confluence of the great Congarees river, on its ſouth-weſt ſide, from thence it is

called

called the Santee to its mouth at Cape Roman or Carteret.

The Catawba river, from its ſource in the Apalachian or Alegany mountains in North-Carolina, to the mouth of Santee in the Atlantic ocean on the coaſt of South-Carolina, is nearly ſix hundred miles in length, along with its meanders, and almoſt five hundred miles in a ſtraight line; containing an aſtoniſhing quantity of water. Including the other branches of this river, which alſo fall into the Santee, it paſſes through a country as rich and fertile, and contains on and adjoining its waters as large a quantity of fine land, as any river of its extent in the univerſe.

CHAP. XXVII.

Camden. Lands. Rivers. Inſects. Inhabitants. Rice. Indigo. Manure.

CAMDEN is a place of conſiderable commerce, and is improving very faſt, but I do not think it meriting the pains, fatigue, and trouble, I have taken to ſee it, for I can diſcover nothing particularly remarkable, either in the town, or in the country around it.

It is about an hundred and fifty miles, in a direct courſe, from Saliſbury; but is an hundred and eighty, or near two hundred miles, by the circuitous route I made by the Catawbas, and between one hundred and ſixty and an hundred and eighty miles from Charles Town.

There is no hill, ſcarcely an eminence near it, excepting Santee hills, about thirty miles to the eaſtward, on the ſame ſide of the river, but at the diſtance of ſeveral miles from the banks, and they continue

continue in a chain, nearly in the ſame direction, for thirty or forty miles farther.

Here the land is divided into firſt and ſecond low grounds, and high lands or barrens.

The firſt and ſecond low grounds are what is cultivated, and formed into plantations, producing crops of Indian corn, rice, and indigo.

The high or barren land is divided into oak and pine barrens; of which the oak is always the ſign of the more fertile ſoil, for the pine barrens are only pine or fir-trees growing, ſcattered promiſcuouſly, in a bed of looſe, deep ſand, which ſcarcely produces a ſingle blade of verdure, and is exceſſively fatiguing and troubleſome for either horſes or men to travel through, every ſtep therein ſinking almoſt to the knee.

In the woods, eſpecially in the low-grounds of all the rivers, creeks and branches of water, vaſt quantities of reeds ſpontaneouſly vegetate, and are in a perpetual ſtate of verdure, affording moſt excellent

excellent food for cattle and horſes, which keep fat upon this provender all the year round; for no proviſion or forage of any kind is required to be laid in for them againſt the winter, as during that ſeaſon they are the fatteſt.

For here all the inclemency of the weather is in the ſummer, when the intenſeneſs of the heat, and the ſcorching rays of the ſun, the multitudes of noxious and troubleſome flies, and innumerable other pernicious inſects, continually exhauſt, prey upon, and torment every living creature in the fields and woods, ſucking their blood, fretting, and torturing them almoſt to death; ſo that at this time of the year, every kind of beaſt falls away, and becomes miſerably poor and lean. For even to mankind, with all his reſources and advantages, the heat then becomes intolerable, nor can he find any ſhelter or defence againſt the aſſaults of theſe flies, inſects, and poiſonous reptiles, that then infeſt the whole ſurface of nature.

The

The country is throughout one continued plain and foreſt, with the plantations and ſettlements formed only upon the ſides of the rivers and water-courſes. The inhabitants are a feeble race, of a tawney, or yellowiſh hue, and ſallow, cadaverous complexions; but many of the rice and indigo planters in this neighbourhood are very gay and opulent.

Even the Negroes are ſhrivelled, and diminutive in ſize, compared with thoſe in Virginia; nor is their value equal, as I am informed, to theirs by near fifty per cent.

The culture of both rice and indigo is extremely unwholſome, as the former muſt be covered with water, during the greater part of the time of its vegetation; and the putrid exhalations, proceeding from the ſtagnated water, muſt be particularly injurious to health, and occaſion obſtinate intermittents.

The indigo alſo requires a great deal of water in its manufacture, and ſoon becomes rotten and putrid in this ſultry climate: afterwards nothing can be more

offenſive and inſalubrious than it is ; yet, in that ſtate of the higheſt putreſcence, they manure their lands with it, ſpreading it over their fields whilſt wet and ſtinking, which thereby become abominably noiſome, and abſolutely render the whole ſurrounding atmoſphere, within the influence or contact of the offenſive putrid effluvia, extremely deleterious and baneful.

South-Carolina was, for a long time, without a ſingle court of judicature for the diſtribution of law, juſtice, or equity, throughout its whole extent, excepting at Charles Town, the metropolis, which was a grievance of very great magnitude to individuals, and really detrimental to the province at large; to palliate which, the juriſdiction of ſingle magiſtrates was enlarged, and extended. However, it was peculiarly beneficial to the inhabitants of Charles Town, who were in a great meaſure enriched thereby, as a vaſt concourſe of people from every part of the province,

as

as well as from other governments, were then drawn there perpetually.

But lately, South-Carolina has been divided into ſix diſtinct diſtricts: viz. George Town, Charles Town, Beaufort, Orangeſburg, Camden, and Chawraw: at the capital, or chief town of each of which, courts of juſtice, common-pleas, quarter-ſeſſions, &c. are eſtabliſhed, and regularly held Since that period, the whole country has been conſiderably benefited by the meaſure, and has flouriſhed exceedingly,

In the calculation, made by the Congreſs, of the number of inhabitants in each ſtate, South-Carolina is ſaid to contain two hundred and twenty-five thouſand one hundred and ſixteen, of which one fifth part only are Whites. I have good reaſon to believe this number to be exaggerated about twenty-five thouſand one hundred and ſixteen.

This country has alſo decreaſed in population conſiderably ſince the rebellion, eſpecially ſince the evacuation of Charles Town,

when it is ſuppoſed near ten thouſand inhabitants left the province.

Throughout all this large and valuable province, there are only three ſea-ports; the chief of which is Charles Town, with George Town on the north-eaſt, and Port Royal on the ſouth-weſt: the latter has much the beſt harbour of the whole; the other two being incumbered with bars at their entrance, which render them inacceſſible to large ſhips, and difficult to any, eſpecially as ſeveral of theſe banks and quickſands are reported to fluctuate, and frequently change their poſition.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Great Curiosity of the lower Class of Inhabitants. Impertinent Questions. Conjectures of my Guide. Rendered serviceable.

HAVING soon sufficiently gratified my curiosity in Camden and its vicinity, and hearing much conversation again concerning Henderson's settlement on Kentucky, the rout to which being now thought safe, I changed my design of proceeding to Charles-Town, for that of an expedition to the Ohio, which had long been the first object of my wishes; intending to defer visiting Charles-Town, Savannah, Augusta, St. Augustine, &c. until after my return from Kentucky.

Accordingly I set out for Salisbury, by the nearest way, intending to pass through the Moravian towns on my journey from thence to Hillsborough, from which place I proposed to begin my expedition to Henderson's new settlement; these Moravians and their towns having been the

only objects and places deserving attention, that escaped my observation on my progress southward.

It was about the last of April when I departed from Camden, the heat of the weather was increasing fast, and began to be troublesome: but this was the very best season of the year to enter upon my present hazardous undertaking.

On the third day at noon my guide Clifton took his last farewell of me, being nearly opposite to Charlottesburg, the place of his residence.

Having found him extremely useful and attentive, in return for his services and fidelity, I presented him with a gratuity of eight dollars at parting, over and above his scanty wages, at which the poor fellow was absolutely over-joyed, and, as I have frequently heard since, has resounded my praises, and his gratitude, far and near.

It may not be improper here to observe, how very troublesome and disagreeable the extreme curiosity of the lower class of

inhabitants at firſt appears to ſtrangers and travellers.

I was for a long time exceedingly peſtered with the impertinent interrogations of, 'What was my buſineſs? What I ſought after? Where did I intend to ſettle? and What brought me to this country?'

As I always found ſome expedient to evade anſwering theſe queſtions, each reſolved his own in the manner his imaginations and conjectures inclined him to believe, and they were all ſatisfied; but every one was preſſing for me to fix my reſidenne in his neighbourhood.

My honeſt guide firſt took it into his head, that I was endeavouring to diſcover a judicious ſituation to commence and extend an European commerce; but finding that I paſſed by and overlooked the moſt excellent ſpots for that purpoſe, and that I took great notice of the face of the country, and of the quality and fertility of the ſoil, and examined into the ſtate, nature, and mode of agriculture, as I paſſed; all

theſe, with my avowed intentions, which I had frequently expreſſed, of viſiting Henderſon's ſettlement on Kentucky, induced him at length to alter his firſt opinion, and form an abſolute concluſion, that I was a ſpeculator in lands, ſparing neither trouble, expence, nor enquiry to diſcover the fineſt land, and beſt bargains, to make purchaſes of.

This ſuppoſititious report he conſtantly circulated, and it ſpread with great celerity to an aſtoniſhing extent. However, I never found any injury or prejudice attend me on that account, but rather the reverſe, for every perſon appeared ſtudious to contribute to my amuſement and information wherever I went, and by this means I acquired a degree of knowledge, which otherwiſe could not have been obtained in double the time; and beſides I was always beheld in a reſpectable light.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Saliſbury. Moravian River. Moravian Towns and Settlement. Peculiar Cuſtoms and Police. Women in Common. Flouriſhing State. Their Manufactures. Produce. Salem. Bethania. Bethabara. Their Situations.

AS I rode eaſy journies, it was on the fourth day after my departure from Camden that I arrived at Saliſbury.

Here I remained but one night, and ſet out next morning very early for the Moravian towns, which lie almoſt due north from Saliſbury.

I croſſed Grant's Creek about four miles from the town, and juſt above its mouth I croſſed the Yadkin, at a very bad ford, about nine or ten miles from Saliſbury.

About ten miles farther I forded the Moravian River at its mouth, juſt above where it enters the Yadkin, and rode along an exceeding bad rough road up the weſtern ſide of the river, until I arrived at Bethania, which is the moſt weſterly and northerly of all the Mora-

vian towns, being about fifty miles from Saliſbury.

It ſtands upon a water-courſe named Bethania Creek, which is a conſiderable branch of the Moravian River.

It was late at night before I arrived. I was extremely fatigued, and departed next morning for Bethabara, which I reached to breakfaſt, after fording another branch of the Moravian River, about ſix miles on this ſide of Bethania.

This town is ten miles from the other; but being informed that Salem was the principal, I immediately proceeded on after breakfaſt, and arrived there about noon, this place being only about ſeven miles diſtant from Bethabara.

This ſociety, ſect, or fraternity of the Moravians have every thing in common, and are poſſeſſed of a very large and extenſive property.

They have a kind of monaſtic inſtitution in their internal police, and in bringing up and educating the younger of both ſexes, who are totally ſecluded from

from converſation, or intercourſe, with each other, until marriage; after which a houſe, a portion of land, ſtock, and utenſils of every kind, are allotted each couple, and the produce of their labour and induſtry is depoſited in the common ſtock.

From their infancy they are inſtructed in every branch of uſeful and common literature, as well as in mechanical knowledge and labour, which even then is converted to beneficial and profitable purpoſes, for the emolument of the community at large.

But their peculiar uniformity in dreſs, and the long beards of the men of that particular ſect of them, commonly called Dunkards, have a very ſingular, ſtriking, and uncouth appearance.

The children are ſeparated from their parents during their earlieſt infancy, and are brought up altogether, each ſect diſtinct from the other, in a kind of ſeminaries, as belonging only to the whole ſociety, to whom collectively a parental affection is by this means aſſiduouſly in-

culcated, cheriſhed, and eſtabliſhed; and all perſonal attachments and paternal love and regard are as diligently checked, diſcouraged, diminiſhed, and, in a great degree, annihilated.

It is ſaid that parents actually cannot diſtinguiſh their own offspring from others; and that the children alſo as ſoon forget every trace by which they might recognize their parents: as they are ſeparated during the earlieſt ſtage of infancy, this is readily accompliſhed and eaſily accounted for.

It is alſo reported that thoſe members of the ſociety who have arrived at years of maturity, particularly the rulers or elders, enjoy their women in common, ſo that the parents on one ſide are difficult to be aſcertained. This circumſtance, however, though much and almoſt univerſally credited, they themſelves abſolutely deny; and I ſhall not undertake to pronounce a deciſion, or even an opinion, one way or the other.

The

The Moravians have many excellent and very valuable farms, on which they make large quantities of butter, flour, and proviſions, for exportation.

They alſo poſſeſs a number of uſeful and lucrative manufactures, particularly a very extenſive one of earthen ware, which they have brought to great perfection, and ſupply the whole country with it for ſome hundred miles around.

In ſhort, although they very carefully preſerve themſelves from intermixing with, and detached from every other ſect, ſociety, or order of people, yet they certainly are valuable ſubjects, and by their unremitting induſtry and labour have brought a large extent of wild rugged country into a high ſtate of population and improvement.

It is impoſſible for me to relate or diſcover one half of the ſingular manners, policy, cuſtoms, and peculiarities of the Moravians, during the very contracted reſidence I made amongſt them, for I remained there but three days; and what I have

I have mentioned is only a ſketch of their exterior *en paſſant*.

And as I have no doubt but others have ſufficiently explained the principles and minutiæ of the internal government of this ſect or fraternity, with the advantages of a better opportunity of information, and ſuperior abilities and knowledge of the ſubject than I am able to boaſt of; therefore I conceive it is totally unneceſſary for me to enlarge any farther upon that head on this occaſion.

Salem, their principal town and ſettlement, is ſeven miles from Bethabara, ſeventeen from Bethania, about forty-five from Saliſbury, and near ninety miles from Hilliſborough.

It ſtands on Bellews Creek, a branch of the river Dan, which runs into or rather principally compoſes the Roanoak; although the other two Moravian towns are built upon branches of the Moravian River, or Creek, which is alſo pretty conſiderable, but falls into the Yadkin.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

The Ararat Mountains. Tryon Mountains. Moravian Mountains. Carraway Mountains. Grand and beautiful perſpective Views.

IN the ride from Saliſbury to Bethania, my ſight was frequently regaled with a glimpſe of the ſummit of Tryon mountains on my left, and the ſtupendous mountain of Ararat directly before me.

Coming from Bethania to Salem, I was extremely pleaſed with beholding the ſame mountains of Tryon on my right, the Moravian mountain on my left, and the Carraway Mountains in front, although it was but very ſeldom I could enjoy that pleaſure; *viz.* only in paſſing over the ſummits of the high hills, appendages of theſe mountains.

The Moravian towns and ſettlements are ſituated on the baſe of the ſouth weſt ſide of the Moravian Mountains, which are in fact only huge protuberances

from,

from, or appendages of, the ſtupendous Ararat on the north-weſt, and the Carraway Mountains on the ſouth-eaſt, to which they appear equally to belong.

The ſoil in general is rich and fertile, the face of the country rocky, broken, and mountainous, though many of the Moravian ſettlements are choice level ſpots, and the whole is extremely well watered with excellent ſtreams of that fluid, light, clear, and wholeſome, which are likewiſe converted, by the ingenuity, labour, and induſtry of the inhabitants, into the uſeful purpoſes of turning mills of many different kinds.

On the fourth day after my arrival at Salem I left it, and proceeded on my journey to Hilliſborough; and, deſiring to ſee as much of the country as poſſible, intended to take a very circuitous route to that place, by the lower road over the Allamance, as I had come out by the upper road over the Reedy River on my firſt journey ſouth-weſtward.

For

For this purpoſe it was neceſſary for me to take a long ride along the baſe of the Carraway mountains, between the eaſt ſide of them and the Deep River, a principal branch of the North-weſt or Cape Fear River.

Accordingly, at the diſtance of twelve miles from Salem, I arrived at the ſummit of the Carraway Mountains, at the north-eaſt end of the ridge, an hour after ſun-riſe.

Here I alighted as uſual, to enjoy the pleaſures of the grand, wild, and uncultivated ſcene of perſpective around me.

The mountain is nearly half a mile broad on the ſummit, and on the ſouth-weſt brow I firſt began to take a retroſpective view of the beautiful ſcene which I was now leaving behind me. Tryon Mountain on the weſt; the Moravian Mountain on the north, brightened with the beams of the riſing ſun, over which the mighty Ararat erected his ſtupendous gilded head; the thick embrowned greeniſh foreſt below, interſected with the multitude of

water-courſes that fall into the meandering ſerpentine Yadkin, thinly ſpotted, as is common in theſe comprehenſive, ſylvan perſpectives, with the ſettlements of the inhabitants of the earth, which were now darkened with the vaſt ſhadow of the mountains over-hanging them, that had as yet precluded them from a ſight of the grand luminary of nature.

Having long gazed with infinite pleaſure, and without an alloy of ſatiety, on theſe admirable ſcenes, time, ever advancing, reminded me of the neceſſity of proceeding, if it was only to behold the equally grand and delightful perſpective on the oppoſite ſide of the mountain.

This was a more bright and ſplendid ſcene than the paſt, for here the ſun gilded every object, and at the ſame time that the magnitude, wildneſs, and extent of the view rendered it awful, the ſerene ſmiling ſky and climate inſpired the moſt pleaſing and delightful ſenſations.

From this ſituation I could perceive the mountains beyond Haw River, and above

Hillſ-

Hillſborough, at a vaſt diſtance on the left; on the right an extenſion of view of the ridge of the Carraway Mountains, towering above each other in wild diſorder; and in front the ſight was bounded by the horizon at an immenſe diſtance, verging above the line of which appeared the hills of Allamance, and the high lands on each ſide of them; and the Deep River below and directly before me winding in beautiful ſerpentine meanders, as if iſſuing from underneath the mountain where on I ſtood, and ſpreading for a long way under the eye, as if drawn upon a carpet; with the dark chaſms containing Reedy River and the numerous other branches of the Haw; but the whole, as is conſtantly the appearance in this country, an immenſe unbounded foreſt, ſo perfectly overſpread and totally covered with thick and ſeemingly impenetrable woods, that the thinly ſcattered human ſettlements can ſcarcely be aſcertained by the eye, loſt and confounded in the magnitude, grandeur, and

and immenſity of the general objects which compoſe the ſurrounding, pleaſing, awful ſcene.

The trees were all juſt putting forth their young and tender foliage, over which the ſun-beams diſplayed a beautiful chearful luſtre. The birds were warbling forth their melodious and variegated notes, welcoming the vegetation of returning ſpring. Odoriferous gales, from every direction, pervaded the whole ſurrounding atmoſphere, with the moſt elegant and grateful perfumes. But ſociety, endearing delightful ſociety, was wanting to form and complete the felicity of man.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

Great Allamance. Regulators. Hillſborough. Colonel Mac Donald, and the unfortunate Loyaliſts of North Carolina. Their Diſaſter at More's Creek Bridge. Their hard Fate and barbarous Treatment.

WITH a ſolitary ſigh, occaſioned by, and expreſſive of, the want of a proper object to ſhare, increaſe, and to whom I might communicate the pleaſures of my imagination and ſenſes, in the enjoyment of this elegant perſpective, I left this charming ſpot (deſcribed in the laſt chapter), and proceeded down the declivity of the mountain.

Having dined at the ordinary at the foot of the Carraway ridge, where I had lodged formerly on my firſt expedition to the ſouth-weſtward, at the place where the upper road from Hillſborough to Saliſbury croſſes this, I arrived at another indifferent houſe of public entertainment, where I was obliged to take up my reſidence for the night, after a journey of fifty miles, which, in this rough country,

and bad roads, is indeed exceſſively fatiguing both for the horſe and his rider.

Ever ſince I croſſed the mountain I have been deſcending all day between the Deep River and the baſe of the Carraway Ridge, and never at any conſiderable diſtance from either.

This ordinary, where I lodged, is ſituated at the croſſing of two great public roads, viz. that from the Moravian towns (in which I have journied ſince I left them), to Wilmington, Brunſwick, &c. on the coaſt of the Atlantic, and the lower road or great trading path from Hillſborough to Saliſbury, &c. which now was the way for me to proceed by.

Accordingly, in the morning, I took my left-hand croſs-road, and after a long, but pleaſant, ride down the eaſtern ſide of the Allamance Creek, I arrived at night at the houſe of a Mr. Michael Holt, a Dutchman, whoſe plantation was adjoining the creek, near the place where it enters the Haw River; having obſerved that I rode over a great deal of

excellent land during theſe two days, the laſt of which I likewiſe travelled at leaſt fifty miles.

Mr. Holt, although a High Dutchman, or rather the ſon of Dutch or German parents, for he himſelf was born in America, is a very loyal ſubject, and entertained me with great hoſpitality. He is a magiſtrate, poſſeſſes a conſiderable property, and has a large ſhare of good ſenſe and ſound judgement, but without the leaſt improvement from education, or the embelliſhment of any kind of poliſh, even in his exterior.

In the courſe of a long intereſting converſation, with which he entertained me, and really afforded me a great deal of ſatisfaction and information by his ſenſible, blunt, and ſhrewd remarks on every ſubject occaſionally, he explained the whole grounds, proceedings, and termination of that moſt unfortunate and much to be lamented affair of the Regulators, which made ſo great a noiſe in North Carolina, their ſcene of action, as well as in all America beſides.

But, to avoid throwing reflections and cenſure, however juſt or otherwiſe, on characters of perſons ſtill in exiſtence, out of whoſe power it is now ever to atone for their former, perhaps ill-timed, unfortunate, and miſtaken conduct, I ſhall ſuffer it to reſt in oblivion, only obſerving that thoſe unhappy, ill-fated victims, the Regulators of North Carolina, were, and ſtill are among the worthieſt, ſteadieſt, and moſt reſpectable friends to Britiſh government and real conſtitutional freedom. But oppreſſion, miſrepreſentation, and ill fortune ſeem ever to have been the attendants on, and inauſpicious fate of exemplary loyalty and virtue.

I left Mr. Holt on the ſecond day after breakfaſt, and croſſing the Haw River, &c. at a very good ford, arrived at Hillſborough to dinner, having rode only about twenty-ſix miles.

[This Mr. Holt, of Orange county, ſome Americans from Guildford county, almoſt all the Chiefs of the former Regulators,

lators, and about fifty or sixty of the principal men of the Scots Highland Emigrants of the settlement of Cross Creek, all under the command of Lieutenant-colonel Donald Mac Donald, as brigadier-general (now in London), having received great encouragement and particular directions from Governor Martin, his Majesty's Governor of North Carolina, to array the loyal inhabitants as militia in arms, who are very numerous in this province, he having promised to support them with arms, ammunition, money, and troops, if they could penetrate as far as Wilmington, or Brunswick, before which he lay at anchor in the river of Cape Fear on board a vessel of war, accordingly raised and arrayed about fifteen hundred men within a few days.

But having very imprudently delayed time for several weeks afterwards, and having committed some other capital blunders and mistakes, which however they were in some measure compelled to do,

much againſt Colonel Mac Donald's inclinations, and out of his power to prevent, this afforded the rebels an opportunity to aſſemble and collect in great force from every quarter around, to the number of ſix or eight thouſand men, tolerably well armed, to oppoſe their progreſs.

Yet, in the face of ſo vaſt a ſuperiority, this handful of brave men, without arms for one-ſixth of their number, and even theſe almoſt entirely deſtitute of ammunition, marched boldly on, forcing their way, with great ſpirit and reſolution, for eighty miles to More's Creek Bridge, within ſixteen miles of Wilmington.

Here (on finding themſelves unſupported, Colonel Mac Donald alſo being very ſick, and unable to command) by falling into diviſions and diſſenſions among themſelves and other injudicious meaſures, in attempting to croſs this rivulet in the face of works thrown up and lined by very ſuperior numbers of the enemy under cover, and ſupported likewiſe

wiſe by ſeveral pieces of artillery, at a place where it was not fordable, upon a wooden bridge, the planks of which had been taken up, and the beams and ſleepers greaſed and rendered ſlippery and impaſſable by the rebels, they met with a total defeat, ſeveral being killed, (particularly a gallant officer, Captain Mac Leod, &c.) fighting bravely with their broad ſwords.

General Mac Donald, who, as I have already mentioned, happened then to be extremely ill, and almoſt all their officers being taken priſoners, were treated with the utmoſt rigour and barbarity, to a degree ſcarcely credible among civilized nations.

Theſe gentlemen were all dragged through the country in triumph, in the moſt diſtreſſed miſerable condition, deſtitute even of common neceſſaries, and were at laſt diſtributed in priſons and wretched places of reſtraint, conſtructed for the particular purpoſes of cruelty, through the diſtant inland parts of Virginia, Maryland, and Penſylvania; and very few of them in-

deed have ever been able to return to their unhappy, diſconſolate, helpleſs families and homes*.

General Mac Donald, Mr. Holt, and about thirty of the principals perſons amongſt them, were brought to Philadelphia in that wretched condition, and thrown into priſon, where I, being then alſo in cloſe confinement in the ſame place, had the melancholy, mortifying ſatisfaction of ſeeing and converſing with my old friendly, hoſpitable Dutchman once more: however, he contrived to make intereſt with the Congreſs to permit him to return again to his family and home, which they alſo granted to all of them who were natives of America, excepting a very worthy officer, Captain Leggit.

But the gallant brave old general, a man then near ſeventy years of age, who had been almoſt half a century an officer in his majeſty's ſervice, was moſt ignominiouſly and inhumanly treated, being rigidly and

* See Chap. xxi. page 169.

cruelly

cruelly confined in a close room, secured with iron doors and bars, along with nine gentlemen besides, in the most sultry weather, and hot climate, during the summer; for he magnanimously and nobly declined their offers of partial indulgence to himself, unless it was extended to the rest of his officers, which the Congress, to its eternal disgrace and infamy, absolutely refused, for no reason whatsoever, but on account of their zealous and exemplary loyalty and resolution.

This worthy old officer General Mac Donald was at length exchanged along with General Prescott, for an American Colonel Mac Gaw, and the American General Alexander, or pretended Earl of Stirling.]

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Hillſborough. Courts of Judicature. Numbers of Inhabitants in North-Carolina. Depopulation. Bewildered and loſt. Uninhabited Foreſt. Wild Beaſts. Great Danger. Hycoe Creek. Country Line Creek.

MY horſe, although an excellent one, being, as well as myſelf, a good deal fatigued and ſtiff with travelling, I remained three days at Hillſborough, for the benefit of reſt and refreſhment.

As I obſerved before, Hillſborough is the capital of a diſtrict, of which there are ſix in the province, where ſupreme courts of judicature, with extenſive and peculiar juriſdictions, are held twice a year: each diſtrict contains a certain number of counties, of which there are thirty-two in the whole ſtate. Every county alſo holds a court quarterly at a court-houſe erected in the moſt central place of each; beſides thoſe ſupreme courts for the diſtricts.

Within the whole province of North-Carolina, there is not one good harbour, being

being all obſtructed with bars, and fluctuating ſand-banks. That of Brunſwick and Wilmington on Cape Fear river is the beſt, but none will admit ſhips of great burden.

North-Carolina was computed to contain about three hundred thouſand inhabitants, in the late calculation made by the Congreſs, and to have a larger proportion of Whites than any other of the ſouthern provinces, that is, more than a third, and nearly one half. But I am well aſſured that this calculation was exaggerated above thirty thouſand at leaſt; and North-Carolina has decreaſed in population very much indeed ſince the commencement of the late fatal hoſtilities, more in proportion than any other ſtate.

On the fourth day, early in the morning, I ſet out in great ſpirits for the lower Sawra towns, on the banks of the Dan river, the largeſt and moſt ſouthern branch of the Roanoak, being the firſt commencement of my journey to Henderſon's famed new ſettlement on Kentucky.

In

In the beginning of this day's ride, I was particularly unfortunate in loſing my way among the various, different, perplexing paths and tracks that are met with on the north-weſt ſide of Hillſborough, among which no particular road can be diſtinguiſhed in pre-eminence.

It was alſo unlucky for me that the greater number of the inhabitants on the plantations, where I called to enquire my way, being Germans, neither underſtood my queſtions, nor could render themſelves intelligible to me; and the few I chanced to find, that did underſtand Engliſh, being chiefly natives of Ireland, moſt wretchedly ignorant and uncivilized, could give me no directions to aſcertain the right way, having ſcarcely ever even heard of the name of the Sawras.

By this means I am confident that I rode over the diſtance of twenty-five miles before I had reached, in a direct line, ten miles from Hillſborough, from whence I had ſet out in the morning.

At

At length, after infinite difficulty, I discovered ſomething like a path or road, which however could ſcarcely be aſcertained, or followed, having been blazed and marked out ſome years before, but by its privacy, unfrequented direction, and want of uſe, had grown up again, ſo as to be even perceived at all with the utmoſt trouble.

Its courſe and continuance however, being pretty ſtraight, enabled me to purſue it, which I did for this whole day with a mind filled and agitated with doubts and dilemmas, without once ſeeing a houſe, or the leaſt veſtige of a human habitation, from about ten miles north-weſt of Hillſborough.

The diſagreeableneſs of my ſituation, and the anxiety of my mind, were not a little aggravated by the uncertainty whether or not this path or road, dull, difficult, and almoſt indeed imperceptible as it was, actually led towards the Sawra towns; as alſo, by the total want of food, or any kind of refreſhment during the whole day, excepting a draught of water out of a brook running through a little

little glade or ſavannah, in which I had alighted, and remained half an hour, for my horſe to feed on the fine luxuriant graſs with which it abounded, who was ſtill leſs able to ſubſiſt without ſome kind of nouriſhment than I was, on account of the ſuperior degree of fatigue he was compelled to undergo.

At the approach of night, my uneaſineſs and anxiety increaſed to a very heavy and painful degree, for there was no habitation within many miles diſtance around me, in the midſt of an immenſe, univerſal, gloomy foreſt, abounding, and extremely infeſted with wild beaſts, whoſe diſmal howls and different horrid yells and cries began to reſound through the woods on every ſide as night approached; and I was abſolutely deſtitute not only of a great-coat, cloak, or blanket, to protect me from the cold of the night, and the dews, but likewiſe even of the means of making a fire to remain by, which is the only effectual method of preventing the approach of the ravenous wild beaſts of the foreſt, that might

might otherwiſe be ſo daring as to attack, and perhaps devour the defenceleſs traveller.

My apprehenſions were not a little magnified by a total want of confidence in my own abilities as a wood's-man, for in that moſt neceſſary acquiſition, and for travelling in this country, indiſpenſible qualification, I was yet a perfect novice, being perpetually ſubject to get bewildered and loſt in going only the diſtance of five miles through the woods without a path.

In my preſent ſituation, I had advanced a long day's ride into the heart of this deſart and uninhabited foreſt, even uncertain whether the almoſt imperceptible path I was in, led to the place I wiſhed to gain: beſides, in the ſuppoſition that it did lead to it, it muſt ſtill be at the diſtance of another day's ride, which, in every probability, was alſo deſtitute of inhabitants, and equally infeſted with and abounding in difficulty and dangers.

I had been ſo negligent and thoughtleſs as to make little enquiry about this circumſtance before I left Hillſborough, and in what

what I did make, could receive no kind of ſatisfaction, for there was not a ſingle perſon in or near Hillſborough, who had ever travelled that way.

Nor had I been more provident in laying in ſome little ſtock of proviſion or refreſhment, and other conveniences and neceſſaries for ſuch a journey; never imagining that there were no inhabitants for the greater part of the way.

In this diſagreeable, diſtreſſing dilemma, and anxious uncertainty, agitated with every painful reflection, I began to think of returning to Hillſborough.

This idea was ſtrong on my mind, during one hour's time, on the approach of night; but ſtill I proceeded on, deliberating on the conſequences of the determination either way.

At length, recollecting, that even if I concluded to return, I ſhould be under the neceſſity of remaining all night in theſe diſmal woods, without a fire, or covering, and deſtitute of every protection or defence againſt the approaches and attacks

tacks of the ſurrounding wild beaſts, whoſe loud roaring and hideous yells continually aſſailed mine ears, or elſe I muſt travelback again all night: in this caſe I conſidered, that as I found ſuch difficulty in aſcertaining and following this dull path in advancing forwards during this day, with all the advantages of light, it would be abſolutely impoſſible to retrace it one hundred yards back in a dark night, the conſequences of which muſt be, that of being entirely bewildered and loſt in the woods, and in all probability, periſhing in the immenſe unbounded foreſt, before I could arrive at a human habitation.

Theſe conſiderations determined me to perſiſt in my journey, and to purſue the path forwards to ſome ſettlement, which, in every human probability, it muſt at length conduct me to.

In this reſolution I puſhed boldly and briſkly on, until I came to a very conſiderable ſtream of water, in the low grounds of which I was much puzzled to trace the continuance of the path.

This rivulet is named Hycoe creek (as I have been informed ſince) and the place where I croſſed was ſo very miry, that my horſe had almoſt ſunk down in it under me.

I was now in great expectations of finding ſome ſettlement, the land upon each ſide of this water-courſe being exceedingly rich and fertile, but, much to my mortification, I travelled through theſe valuable low grounds, re-aſcended the high lands, and rode on ſome miles, without the leaſt appearance of a human habitation.

At length, to my unſpeakable comfort, when hope was almoſt fled, and the gloom of evening had conſiderably advanced, I heard the barking of a dog, and the lowing of oxen; I immediately ſtruck out of the path, and endeavoured, by the neareſt way through the woods, to gain the place from whence theſe agreeable and welcome ſounds proceeded.

But in this attempt it was my fortune to encounter farther diſappointments, and inſuperable obſtacles, for I ſoon met with an

an impenetrable thicket of young hiccory saplings, growing so near to each other, and their branches so perfectly interwoven, and entangled together, that it totally obstructed my farther progress, and compelled me to return to the path I had just left: even this also was a task of difficulty, for in searching after it I was for some time entirely lost and bewildered, before I was able again to discover it.

Having at length found the path, and pursuing it on very eagerly, I soon arrived at the low grounds of another considerable rivulet, which ran in such a serpentine direction, and with so many winding meanders, that the path crossed it five times within the distance of half a mile.

It was now become so dark, and especially in these low grounds, covered and overshadowed with the intermixing branches of the lofty thick woods, of which almost every tree was overgrown with prodigious vines, whose numerous branches and extensive foliage added to the gloom and darkness below, that I could no longer

perceive the path, and conſequently found it impoſſible to proceed much farther.

I was now in a ſituation and predicament the moſt diſagreeable and diſtreſſing that can be conceived; the ground beneath me wet miry and ſinking under my horſe, his legs entangled in the vines, bambooes, briars, bruſh and under-wood, which prevented him from proceeding in any direction; the path entirely loſt, not knowing even on which ſide I had deviated from it; inſects, reptiles, and ſerpents of the moſt poiſonous, deadly, and fatal nature, ſwarming in the woods, and on the ground, and the wild beaſts howling hideouſly around me; the night exceſſively dark, overcaſt and threatening rain; no poſſibility of ſtriking a light, or making a fire, and totally unprotected and defenceleſs againſt the attacks of all thoſe ſurrounding, formidable foes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Mr. Hart. A moſt hoſpitable, benevolent Perſon. An accompliſhed Gentleman. Agreeable Surprife. Fortunate Eſcape. Mr. Bayly. Strange Manner of Lodging. A lovely Girl. Sawra Towns. Sawra Nation. Upper Sawra Towns.

MY ſituation, as repreſented in the concluſion of the laſt chapter, was not rendered leſs mortifying by the certainty of a houſe and inhabitants being near, which was put beyond a doubt by the lowing of the oxen and the barking of the dogs, that I had heard, although I had found it impracticable to reach the place from whence thoſe deſirable ſounds ſeemed to proceed.

At length I bethought myſelf of calling out as loud as I was able. This expedient ſucceeded to my wiſh, for, after I had hallooed ſeveral times as loudly as I could vociferate, to my great ſurprize and inexpreſſible ſatisfaction and pleaſure, I was anſwered by a human voice, which ſeemed to come from ſome perſon on an eminence, juſt above the ſpot whereon I was fixed.

However, being unable to approach the place where he was, I continued to call aloud, and was regularly anſwered by the ſame voice, until in a ſhort time a Negro arrived at the diſmal thicket wherein I was faſt entangled.

It was with the utmoſt difficulty, and a conſiderable time before he was able to extricate me from this perplexing and perilous ſituation, but at length he effected it, and brought me once more to the comfortable and much-wanted aſſiſtance of ſociety.

The poor Negro himſelf, although accuſtomed to the woods, appeared aſtoniſhed at the dangerous and dreadful ſituation in which he found me, and ſeemed almoſt equally rejoiced with myſelf at my fortunate deliverance.

The houſe and plantation to which the Negro ſlave conducted me, belonged to a Mr. Hart his maſter, who received and entertained me with the greateſt hoſpitality and kindneſs; but what added to my aſtoniſhment and agreeable ſurprize was,

to

to find the proprietor, not only a poliſhed member of ſociety, but almoſt an accompliſhed and complete gentleman.

To meet with ſuch a perſon in the wild back woods of America, in a ſituation the moſt recluſe, ſolitary and unfrequented, and at ſo great a diſtance from the inhabitants, who are themſelves little better, perhaps much worſe, than ſavages, eſpecially at a time when I ſtood ſo much in need of aſſiſtance, was altogether unexpected, and afforded me a gratification and pleaſure, thus enhanced by theſe attending circumſtances, not to be deſcribed in language.

The refreſhments, comforts, and conſolation he beſtowed upon me with a liberal hand, appeared to afford even a ſuperior degree of ſatisfaction and felicity to him, than to me; and he preſſed me to remain there the day following, which was wet and rainy, to reſt and refreſh both myſelf and my horſe, and to recover from the ſevere fatigue and hardſhips we had undergone.

In the courſe of the enſuing day, we took an opportunity of viſiting. and more narrowly examining the ſpot wherein I had been ſtopt, and from whence the Negro had extricated me. The ſlave conducted us to it.

It was indeed the moſt diſagreeable and dangerous place imaginable: a deep miry ſwamp overgrown with briars, bambooes, and poiſonous vines, among which my horſe and I had been ſo perplexed and entangled.

Fortunate it was for us both that we met with thoſe impediments, for had we proceeded only ten yards farther, both my horſe and myſelf muſt have inevitably periſhed in a quagmire, or deep moraſs, from which no poſſible aſſiſtance could have reſcued or preſerved us.

We returned to the houſe, admiring with gratitude at this hair-breadth providential deliverance, and early on the morning following I took my laſt farewell of the humane benevolent Mr. Hart, and proceeded on my journey, very little better provided againſt contingencies than before,

before, but perfectly refreshed and recovered from my fatigue, with my horse also in high spirits.

The last mentioned rivulet, the low grounds of which had been the scene of my principal difficulties and perils, and on the high land adjoining it the worthy and benevolent Mr. Hart's plantation was situated, is named Country Line creek.

There is a small settlement on the choice land on the banks of these two rivulets, the Hycoe and the Country Line, which are considerable streams of water, that run into the Dan River at the distance of fifty miles from this place.

Having made a very early breakfast before I departed, and having been shown the continuance of the former dull, difficult, blind path, whose direction to the Sawra Towns was now ascertained to my sufficient satisfaction, I travelled during all this long day likewise, until late in the afternoon, without once discovering the least vestige of a human settlement, or habitation.

But

But about that time, as I advanced on the ſummit of a conſiderable hill, I could plainly perceive mountains, vaſt valleys, and deep chaſms, precipices, and ravines on my right: for I obſerved, that the face of the country had been becoming more and more uneven, broken, and rugged, and the eminences had been gradually ſwelling into higher hills, as I proceeded on, for the laſt ten or twelve miles.

I now perceived a path on my right, which appeared plainer than that I had travelled in ſo long: this raiſed my doubts, but at length determined me to continue to purſue that which was the dulleſt.

Fortunately for me, my deciſion was right in this inſtance, for in the evening I arrived at the Sawra Towns, after encountering ſome further difficulties in aſcertaining the right way among the variety of different tracks I met with immediately on entering the vicinity of the ſettlement.

At the Sawra Towns, I lodged at the houſe of a Mr. Bailey, on the banks of the river

river Dan, a common plain back wood's planter, with a large family of Bel Savages, a hoſpitable, but uncultivated mind, and rude manners.

Mr. Bailey had only one room, and one bed, in his houſe, on which he and his wife were accuſtomed to ſleep: this they very kindly offered to accommodate me with, but as they were advanced in years, and I was young and healthy, although ſuperior in rank and appearance to them, I could not think of accepting their very generous offer, but took my chance on a pallet ſpread on the floor from one ſide of the room to the other, on which every perſon of the family, excepting the maſter and miſtreſs, lay promiſcuouſly, men and women, boys and girls.

The weather being uncommonly warm, I found the pallet by far the moſt agreeble place of repoſe, and I aroſe early in the morning with the reſt of the family, which conſiſted, beſides ſome ſlaves and his ſmall children the little boys and girls, of ſeveral ſons grown up to maturity, and three

three young women his daughters, the youngeſt of whom was juſt fifteen years old, a moſt lovely charming brunette, named Betſy, of a ſhape and features perfectly exquiſite and expreſſive, and endued with a mind and manners, mild, gentle, and delicate, yet quite in a ſtate of nature, unincumbered with poliſhed refinements or faſhionable ceremony, and unimproved by education, acquired knowledge, and modern accompliſhments,

Mr. Bailey and all his family joined in entreating me to ſtay with them ſome days; and, as I really ſtood in great need of reſt and refreſhment, it was with infinite ſatisfaction that I complied with their very friendly hoſpitable requeſt.

During ten days that I remained at the Sawra Towns, I found the lovely Betſy my kind friend and conſtant companion. She endeavoured to pleaſe, and ſhe gave delight. Although truly, and in the moſt liberal ſenſe, the child of nature, without an alloy either of art or diſſimulation, I actually diſcovered in her mind a degree of

of generoſity, ſentiment, and the moſt delicate ſenſibility, that very few of the more poliſhed and accompliſhed ladies can boaſt of.

She abſolutely gained on my affections every moment, and it required the utmoſt exertions of reſolution to tear myſelf at laſt from her delightful company. But the image of the lovely Betſy Bailey can never be eraſed from my mind, and it is with pleaſure I cheriſh her remembrance.

The Sawras, although once a conſiderable nation of Indians, have been long extinct: there is not even a ſingle family or trace of them remaining, excepting theſe veſtiges of their towns, which ſtill continue to ſupport their name, this being fortunately preſerved as the appellation of theſe two ſettlements.

The upper Sawra Towns are trifling and inſignificant, compared with the lower Sawra Towns, which is an extremely valuable ſettlement: and although I found more fatigue, and greater hardſhips, difficulties, and dangers in my journey hither, than in all my former travels through

America, this place is not more than ſixty-five miles from Hillſborough, and ninety-five from Saliſbury, in the ſame county with the latter, viz. that of Roan, it is ſituated; being within only a very few miles of the northern boundary line of the province of North-Carolina.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Dan River. Strange and ſingular Phenomenon. Great Extent. Lower Sawra Towns. A vaſt and profitable Purchaſe. Horn, or Hoop Snake. Moſt poiſonous. Alarming Accounts of the Indians.

THE river Dan, at the lower Sawra towns, is near ſix hundred yards wide, rocky, rapid, bold, and containing a vaſt body of water; it ariſes in the Alegany mountains, near to the ſource of the river Ararat, a branch of the Yadkin, and at no great diſtance from the New River, which is the upper part, or moſt ſouthward branch of the Great Kanhaway that falls into the Ohio.

The Dan is the largeſt of three great rivers, namely, the Dan, the Banniſter, and the Stanton, which at their confluence compoſe the Roanoak, and in all appearance this river alone, at the Sawra towns, contains a greater quantity of water than the Roanoak itſelf at Halifax, which is above two hundred miles below, and then it has received near an hundred large

large rivulets, beſides the other two great rivers, the Banniſter and the Stanton, in its courſe between theſe two places; yet the Dan, at the Sawra towns, is nearly twice as wide as the Roanoak is at Halifax.

This is a phenomenon difficult to be accounted for, and only reconciled to my ideas, or underſtanding, by the ſuppoſition of the vaſt quantity of water evaporated by the intenſely hot beams of the ſun, and by the air, during its courſe, and by ſtill a more enormous proportion being conſtantly abſorbed in the ſandy ſoil through which it paſſes during the latter part of its progreſs.

I muſt confeſs that this ſolution is by no means a ſufficient eclairciſſement, therefore I ſhall not hazard any farther explanation, or conjecture, but leave it to the exerciſe of more ingenious minds, contenting myſelf with the bare relation of the mere matter of fact.

The length of this river from the ſource of the Dan, in the Alegany mountains,

tains, to Roanoak inlet on the coaſt of the Atlantic Ocean, is very extenſive, being more than ſix hundred miles along with the meanders, and not leſs than five hundred miles in a direct line.

The whole ſettlement of the lower Sawra Towns, being a vaſt body of excellent and moſt valuable land, containing thirty-three thouſand acres, of which more than nine thouſand are exceedingly rich low grounds, is the property of Mr. Farley, of the iſland of Antigua in the Weſt Indies, and formerly belonged to the late Col. William Byrd, of Weſtover, on James River, in Virginia.

About the year ſeventeen hundred and ſixty-one, Mr. Byrd ſold the whole of this large, valuable, and extenſive tract of land to a Mr. Maxwell, for only five hundred pounds, who concluded the purchaſe without ſeeing it.

In the ſpring of the enſuing year, he went out to view his new eſtate.

It happened, juſt at that time, that a prodigious flood in the Dan had overſpread

the whole of the low lands on the river, of which near ten thouſand acres were covered by the inundation.

This extraordinary circumſtance, and very awful appearance, aſtoniſhed and intimidated Mr. Maxwell, who, on his return to Weſtover, expreſſing diſſatisfaction with his purchaſe, Mr. Byrd, with a generoſity for which he was diſtinguiſhed, returned him the five hundred pounds, and received again the property of his lands.

That ſame year, in the fall, or autumn, Mr. Farley of Antigua, being on a viſit at Weſtover, in Virginia, and having underſtood that Col. Byrd had a large tract of excellent land in the back country to diſpoſe of, after being informed of the number of acres, immediately offered one thouſand pounds for the purchaſe, without ever having ſeen it alſo; which offer was as readily accepted.

Mr. Farley, having returned to Antigua, ſuffered it to remain in this uncultivated, unimproved ſtate, and never went near it, until the year one thouſand ſeven hundred and ſixty-nine, when he ſent his ſon, James

Parke Farley, Eſq. into Virginia, who ventured out that diſtance into the back country to view the eſtate, and after ſome difficulty in removing accidental ſettlers, who had taken poſſeſſion of ſuch parts thereof as they beſt approved without any legal right or authority, divided it into numerous plantations and farms, which he rented out, keeping in his own hands, a moſt valuable excellent tract, the choice of the whole; on this plantation he ſettled a great number of ſlaves, and a vaſt ſtock, all of which alſo increaſed prodigiouſly.

In ſhort the value of this eſtate has augmented ſo exceedingly, that in the year ſeventeen hundred and ſeventy-two, Mr. Farley refuſed twenty-eight thouſand pounds for the purchaſe of it. A mortifying circumſtance and reflection this to Mr. Byrd, the firſt proprietor, who had tranſacted the buſineſs, and was then in exiſtence and neceſſity; but ſomewhat alleviated by the younger Mr. Farley, in whoſe poſſeſſion it was, having inter-married with

his eldeſt daughter, ſo that by this means the eſtate was not entirely out of the family.

During the ten days of my reſidence at this place, we had frequent alarming accounts of the attacks, depredations, and ſhocking barbarities committed by the Indians on the White inhabitants, ſome diſtance beyond the Dan, about the head of Smith's River which falls into the Dan on the north ſide, almoſt oppoſite to the lower Sawra Towns.

This induced Mr. Bailey and his family, particularly the lovely, amiable Betſy, to be very ſtrenuous and preſſing in perſuading me to defer the proſecution of my intended journey, and to proceed no farther, on account of the hardſhips, difficulties, and imminent dangers I muſt inevitably encounter, at this inauſpicious period, in thepurſuit of this propoſed expedition to Henderſon's new ſettlement on Kentucky, which was ſtill a prodigious diſtance from me, no leſs than five hundred miles, and through the Indian country the greater part of the way.

They

They all very urgently and kindly requeſted me to remain along with them during the enſuing ſummer; and had I at that time attended and given way to the bias of my inclinations, and the feelings of my heart, I ſhould certainly have embraced their hoſpitable propoſal with infinite pleaſure.

But when I maturely conſidered the fatal conſequences of yielding to the pleaſing allurements of the ſenſes, and the uncontrouled ſway of the paſſions, at my early period of life, I ſummoned up all my fortitude and reſolution to ſupport and aſſiſt me in the conflict, determined to perſiſt in my original undertaking, however perilous, and tear myſelf from this enchanting, but dangerous ſtate of felicity,

I therefore finally concluded to proceed, notwithſtanding the hazard and jeopardy attending my farther progreſs, ariſing from the alarming commotions of the Indians, which were now indeed ſufficiently aſcertained and authenticated.

When I related to Mr. Bailey the difficulty and hardſhips I had already encountered in my journey out to the Sawra Towns, he informed me, that the road or path, along which I had travelled, was firſt made and blazed about nine years before; but that it had been ſo very little frequented, and the buſhes and underwood had grown up again ſo perfectly, that when he had occaſion to go to Hillſborough, about two years ago, he could ſcarcely perceive it at all; but having a tomahawk with him, he blazed the trees on each ſide, as he went along, by which means he was enabled the more readily to find his way in returning; and that it was the remaining appearance of his blazing on the trees, by which I had been able to trace the path, elſe it muſt have been totally impracticable for me to have found or followed it at all; for he believed no perſon whatever, excepting himſelf and me, had travelled it for ſeveral years paſt, and very few indeed had ever uſed it, ſince its firſt exiſtence.

The

The reaſon of its being ſo much unfrequented was, becauſe what little intercourſe and trade the inhabitants of the Sawra ſettlements carried on with the ſea-ports, and more cultivated part of the country, was either by roads down along the ſide of the Dan and the Roanoak to Halifax, and Edenton, in North-Carolina, or acroſs the country to Peterſburg, and Richmond, &c. on James River, in Virginia.

While I was at the Sawra Towns, one day a little lad of Mr. Bayley's came to acquaint us that he had killed a horn ſnake, which being a curioſity that I was extremely deſirous of obſerving and examining with particular attention, I accompanied him to the place where he ſaid he had left it; but when we arrived there, to my great diſappointment it was not to be found.

He aſſured me that it muſt not have been quite dead, and had recovered ſo much as to be able to crawl from the ſpot on which he had left it, and had ſecreted itſelf ſomewhere among the leaves.

However, every one, and all the inhabitants, with the greateſt confidence aſſerted and avowed their having ſeen ſuch ſnakes, though very ſeldom.

They repreſented them to me, as the moſt formidable and direful foes in exiſtence to the human race, and to all animation; poiſonous and fatal to a degree almoſt beyond credibility.

He is deſcribed as ſomething reſembling a black ſnake, but thicker, ſhorter, and of a colour more inclining to a dark brown. He never bites his adverſary, but has a weapon in his tail, called his ſting, of a hard, horny ſubſtance, in ſhape and appearance very much like to a cock's ſpur: with this he ſtrikes his antagoniſt, or whatever object he aims at, when he leaſt expects it, and if it penetrates the ſkin, it is inevitable and ſudden death.

So very virulent is his poiſon, that it is reported, if he ſhould miſs the object he pointed at, and ſhould ſtrike his horn through the bark of a young ſapling tree, if it penetrates into the ſap or vital juice,

the

the bark or rind will, within a few hours, ſwell, burſt, and peel off, and the tree itſelf will periſh.

As other ſerpents crawl upon their bellies, ſo can this; but he has another method of moving peculiar to his own ſpecies, which he always adopts when he is in eager purſuit of his prey; he throws himſelf into a circle, running rapidly round, advancing like a hoop, with his tail ariſing and pointing forward in the circle, by which he is always in the ready poſition of ſtriking.

It is obſerved, they only make uſe of this method in attacking; for when they fly from their enemy, they go upon their bellies, like other ſerpents.

From the above circumſtance, peculiar to themſelves, they have alſo derived the appellation of hoop ſnakes.

Being firmly reſolved to proceed on my expedition to Kentucky, I endeavoured to hire a guide from this place, but every one that I applied to declined it, both becauſe they were as little acquainted with the way as myſelf, and on account of the dif-

diſturbances, and violent outrages lately committed by the Indians, at which every perſon without exception was terrified in the higheſt degree.

They alſo endeavoured to communicate their panic, fears, and apprehenſions to me; but my ignorance of the actual danger enabled me to reſiſt, with effect, every attack of that nature, and determined me, although I could not obtain either a ſervant, guide, or companion, to perſiſt in the enterprize, however hazardous; and I even concluded to ſet out alone.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Ford the Dan. Fall in. Part with my lovely Guide. Get loſt. Perplexing Situation. Come upon a Number of Indians. Their Behaviour. Their Hoſpitality and Kindneſs.

ON the fifteenth day of May I took my leave of Mr. Bailey and his family, every one of whom ſeemed to be really more concerned for my future ſafety than I could poſſibly have conceived, being all in tears, and appearing almoſt certain that I ſhould be deſtroyed by the ſavages; having uſed their moſt earneſt perſuaſions and utmoſt endeavours to change my reſolution of proceeding on this journey.

The kind-hearted and truly amiable Betſy inſiſted on piloting me over the Dan herſelf, rather than any of her brothers, although the ford at this place was extremely rapid, rocky, and dangerous, particularly to thoſe unacquainted therewith and with the intricate manner of paſſing it, the river being alſo very wide.

This

This I experienced to my coſt, for being rather inattentive in following quite cloſe to my beautiful young Amazonian conductor, who was on horſeback, riding boldly like a man, my horſe ſuddenly plunged with me into a deep place over both our heads, and we were carried down the current, a conſiderable diſtance, with great velocity.

Indeed it was with the utmoſt difficulty I reached the oppoſite ſhore at all, after the greateſt hazard imaginable of being loſt, notwithſtanding both my horſe and myſelf were excellent ſwimmers.

The concern of my lovely guide during this dangerous ſcene was inexpreſſible, and only equalled by her joy on my ſafe arrival on ſhore; the banks of which being ſo ſoft, ſteep, and interwoven with roots of trees, which entangled my horſe's legs ſo much, that I could ſcarcely get him up at all: however, at length I accompliſhed it after ſeveral violent ſtruggles.

There being no inhabitants on this ſide of the river, they having all abandoned their plantations, and fled into a ſtockaded

ſtockaded fort, about thirty miles diſtance from thence, where they had taken refuge, upon ſome of them being found killed by the Indians, I was obliged to ſtrike a light, and kindle a fire in the woods to dry my cloaths; in this my kind companion was as uſual very ſerviceable to me, and in a little more than an hour we ſet out again on the journey, ſhe inſiſting to accompany me ſome miles farther, in order to conduct me the right way which ſhe repreſented as particularly intricate and difficult to find during that diſtance.

When we had rode about ſeven miles together, perceiving my lovely guide make no offer of returning, I inſiſted on our parting, on account of the extreme danger every perſon appeared to apprehend from the Indians by their having all left their habitations, which we found deſerted and empty for the whole way on that ſide of the Dan.

Having at length, by an effort of all my reſolution, overcome the ſtruggle of parting with this lovely, kind, and affectionate friend, I was ſeized with a kind

kind of languor, or careleſſneſs of my fate, my mind and ſpirits being enervated and ſoftened down with an inexpreſſibly painful ſenſibility, which rendered me regardleſs of whatever might befal me, and indeed quite inattentive to my way, ſo that in a very few hours, by purſuing the wrong path, I found myſelf in the woods without any tract whatever to direct my courſe, that in which I had been having terminated, being only made by the hogs, which run wild almoſt all over America, and eſpecially in the weſtern frontiers.

It was this diſagreeable ſituation that firſt rouſed me from this lethargic, but painful reverie in which I had been abſorbed, and I then eagerly puſhed on in hopes, yet very doubtful, of finding ſome path to direct me, and indeed to enable me to travel at all, for it is with great difficulty a perſon on horſeback can paſs on through the woods at all where there is no path, on account of the roughneſs of the ground, the thickets of underwood, the branches

branches of trees hanging low and intermingling with each other, and the numerous water-courſes which are frequently altogether impaſſable for many miles.

It is impoſſible for me to aſcertain how far I had travelled in this moſt diſagreeable of all imaginable ſituations, when all on a ſudden, on the ſide of a gentle aſcent, I perceived a number of men ſitting on the ground, and ſuch they were as I had never ſeen before, painted black and red, and all armed with firelocks and tomahawks.

I was within the diſtance of fifty yards of them before I perceived them, and was abſolutely rejoiced to fall in with them, my firſt idea being that they were hunters, white men, who frequently continue in the woods hunting, for ſeveral months together, without going near the inhabitants, or entering a houſe.

In this idea I immediately went up towards them with joy in my countenance, for in my bewildered condition it was really a pleaſure to me to ſee any of my fellow-

crea-

creatures once more, and I did not know nor conceive danger, even from Indians.

But the inſtant they perceived me, one of them fell proſtrate on the ground, and another jumped on his feet, put his hands to his mouth, and ſent forth a moſt dreadful yell that made the whole woods reſound; and ſeeing me coming boldly up towards them, he advanced a few ſteps to meet me, ſpoke ſome words I did not underſtand, and after pauſing a while, held forth his hand towards me: I ſhook him heartily by the hand, and ſaid *I was very glad to meet with them, for I was loſt; and intreated they would be ſo kind as direct me the way to Beaver Creek and Smith's River.*

He anſwered again in a language that was to me altogether unintelligible, and I then found they were Indians; which diſcovery, however, did not at all alarm orintimidate me, becauſe of my ignorance of the danger I was in.

Obſerving one of them point to a broad gold lace and ſtone buckle which was round

round the crown of my hat and glittered in the ſun, I alighted from my horſe, took it off, and buckled it round the head of him who had ſhaken hands with me and appeared to be the chief perſon among them. He ſeemed much pleaſed with the preſent, and made ſigns for me to ſit down and eat with them: this I readily complied with, and partook of a repaſt, which conſiſted of veniſon, kernels of hickory nuts, and wall-nuts, all mixed together with wild honey, and every one eat with his hands, dipping one of them into the victuals.

To be ſure there was neither delicacy nor cleanlineſs in their manner of eating together, but the food was delicious, and exquiſitely pleaſant to the taſte; and for my own part, having a keen appetite, I eat very heartily, which ſeemed to afford a particular ſatisfaction to my hoſpitable ſavage friends, for ſuch indeed they were to me.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Directed the Way by the Indians. Leatherwood Creek. Plantations abandoned. Beaver Creek. Arrive at the Fort. Refused Admittance.

MY horſe, who had quite as much need of refreſhment as me, was alſo regaling himſelf on the herbage, for I had turned him looſe when I ſat down to this Indian primitive feaſt.

The Indians and I made a ſhift to keep up a kind of converſation by ſigns and geſtures, for I did not underſtand a ſingle word of their language, and I did not then imagine that they underſtood me; but ſince that time I have had many reaſons to believe that Engliſh was not altogther unintelligible to ſome of them, although they either could not, or would not attempt to ſpeak it.

For after both I and my horſe were ſufficiently refreſhed, having ſtaid with them all night, one of the Indians was

diſpatched along with me, by him to whom I had made the preſent, and accompanied me for ſeven or eight miles, to put me into the right way to Beaver Creek, upon Smith's River; and after he had done ſo, and pointed out the courſe for me to proceed in, we ſhook hands and parted, he returned to his companions, and I purſued my journey along a very plain blazed path, that ſoon brought me to a large water-courſe, named Leatherwood Creek, which empties itſelf into Smith's River, a very capital branch of the Dan, the confluence of which is about four miles above the lower Sawra Towns, on the north ſide.

There were ſeveral fine plantations on the rich low grounds of this creek, but they were all deſerted, not a ſingle inhabitant was to be ſeen; their cattle, horſes, &c. were wandering about their maſter's habitations, and conveyed to me the moſt mournful, melancholy, and diſmal ideas that can be conceived.

About eight miles beyond Leather-wood Creek, I met a man on horſeback, whoſe horſe was covered with foam and ſweat.

He ſeemed to be in the utmoſt aſtoniſhment at the ſight of me, and aſked me, "Where, in the name of God, I came "from?" I anſwered him, I came yeſterday from the Sawra Towns, and was on my way to the fort on Smith's River.

He then exclaimed, "Good God! did "not I know that the Indians had taken "up the hatchet, and had begun to kill "the Whites?" and looking on the ground, "declared he ſaw their tracts," or the marks of their footſteps "there then;" and aſked me "if I had not ſeen any of "them? But why (ſaid he) do I aſk "you that? If you had ſeen them, or "they had ſeen you, I certainly ſhould "not have met you here, for they would "either have ſcalped you, or have put "you to death by their tortures."

I replied, "he was miſtaken, for I had "ſeen them, had ate and ſlept with them,

and

" and that they had been very kind to me, " inſtead of ſcalping me, or putting me to " death, as he imagined:" but he waited not to hear the laſt words of what I ſaid, for as ſoon as he underſtood that I had ſeen them, he clapped whip and ſpurs to his horſe back again, as faſt as he could make him go, while I gazed after him, imagining the man was mad or delirious.

I rode on at my leiſure, wondering at this man's ſtrange conduct, and comparing it with that of the Indians towards me, it was not at all to their diſadvantage.

I ſoon afterwards croſſed another large water-courſe named Beaver Creek, not far from the fort, which alſo empties itſelf into Smith's River.

Upon this ſtream there was a very fine corn or griſt mill, which was alſo abandoned by the proprietor, and had been left ſo ſuddenly, that the hopper remained half full of corn unground, while the other half was ground into meal, and in this condition it continued,

the water being turned off from the mill-wheel.

Here I alighted, and fed my horſe, and after he had eaten until he left, ſet out again on my journey.

In riding about two or three miles farther, I at length came to the fort itſelf, which contained all the inhabitants of the country around, men, women, and children crouded all together.

I was exceedingly happy at the thoughts of being once more among inhabitants, but this imaginary felicity was of very ſhort duration, for when I went to the gate of the fort, expecting to go in, I was poſitively refuſed admittance.

My aſtoniſhment at this ſtrange unaccountable conduct towards me could only be equalled by my concern at ſo grievous a diſappointment and mortification, for all my entreaties and moſt earneſt ſolicitations for permiſſion to enter were in vain.

They within inſiſted that I was an enemy, or a Frenchman, becauſe I had been in company with the Indians, and had

had eſcaped unmoleſted, and alſo as my accent was different from theirs.

This I found they were informed of by the man whom I met on horſeback, and who turned back full ſpeed as ſoon as I acquainted him of my having been with the Indians.

This man, it ſeems, had been diſpatched as an expreſs to the next fort, which was a conſiderable diſtance off, for aſſiſtance; and had alſo been directed to reconnoitre the country between; to diſcover, if he could, what danger was to be apprehended; whether the Indians were doing miſchief; and what numbers of them were in the vicinity.

How well he executed his commiſſion, his conduct, already related, evinces; as alſo how totally unfit he was for ſuch a purpoſe, having fled with the utmoſt precipitation on even hearing of Indians, without waiting to diſcover whether they were hoſtile or friendly.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Threaten to ſet Fire to the Fort. Admitted. Shocking Scenes of Iniquity and Obſceneneſs within. Ride out and viſit the Plantations around. Reſolve to ſet out on my Journey.

I Continued to entreat for admittance until they threatened to fire upon me if I did not retire, which made me withdraw from the gate to conſider what ſteps I muſt purſue, for I never found myſelf in ſo ſingular and unpleaſant a predicament in my life.

However, the firſt thing I did was to turn my horſe looſe into a very fine field of green wheat that I obſerved on the banks of the river; and I wandered all round the country adjacent to the fort for ſeveral hours, totally at a loſs what to do, or in what manner to proceed.

This was what is called a ſtockaded fort, but to any perſon, excepting thoſe who have ſeen ſuch in America, it would appear

pear in no reſpect a place of arms, for there is nothing like an eſplanade, counter-ſcarp, nor ditch, neither ramparts nor parapet, no out-poſt, out-centry, nor videttes; but it reſembled a quadrangular polygon, incloſed with large timber, and cuts of treesſplit in two, about twelve or ſixteen feet high above the ground, ſtanding erect, and about three or four feet in the earth, and quite cloſe together, with loop holes cut through about four or five feet from the ground for ſmall arms.

There was alſo ſomething like a baſtion at each angle, which, however, could ſcarcely be ſaid to flank the curtains; and a log-houſe, muſket proof, on each ſide of the gate.

Within the area, nearly in the centre, was a common houſe framed and boarded, filled in, to the height of ſix feet, with ſtones and clay on the inſide, as a defence againſt ſmall arms; it was covered only with ſhingles made of pine, which could be eaſily ſet on fire as well as every

every other part of the whole ſtructure, without exception.

I wandered round and round this fortreſs until night began to advance, and then ventured to approach the gate once more, ſoliciting for admittance, but with no better ſucceſs than before.

I uſed every argument my mind could ſuggeſt to induce them to receive me; put them in mind I was but one man, and deſired them to put me under guard if they ſuſpected me after I was in, if they would only admit me; and beginning alſo to be under apprehenſions for my own life, as the Indians would certainly be tempted to kill a perſon they ſaw ſtraggling round the outſide of the fort, although they did not moleſt me when I came up to them at a diſtance from it; and I alſo conſidered that although one party of them ſpared my life, another party might make no ſcruple of killing me, eſpecially in ſo unfavourable a ſituation; this certain danger inſpired me with a deſperate determination,

tion, and I reſolutely told them at the gate, that I muſt come in, repreſented the fatal conſequences of my being left outſide, and poſitively declared that I would abſolutely ſet fire to the fort if they perſiſted in refuſing me admittance.

They again threatening to ſhoot me, I aſſured them that I would as ſoon be killed by them as by the Indians, and ſolemnly ſwore I would ſet fire to the ſtockades.

Upon this, I was deſired to wait a few minutes, until they conſulted together; at the concluſion of which they agreed to admit me.

The wicker gate was then opened, and I crept in; but, good God! ſuch a ſight as was preſented before mine eyes can ſcarcely be concelved in idea, much leſs deſcribed.

Such a motley crew of men, women, and children; ſuch an abandoned ſet of miſcreants, void of ſhame, but abounding with fear; ſuch horrid imprecations, blaſphemy, obſceneneſs, and every ſpecies of

of iniquity, I never before nor ſince have ſeen or heard of.

No ſubordination, no regularity, no propriety, no good conduct, not a ſingle good word, I had almoſt ſaid good thought, was there within thoſe gates; but all was confuſion, naſtineſs, and the moſt abominable wickedneſs.

To deſcribe the deteſtable ſcenes of depravity that I was hourly witneſs of in this place, would be extremely irkſome to myſelf, and diſguſting to others; and on this account I ſhall paſs them all over, only obſerving, that a ſet of more wicked, abandoned, ſhameleſs, and profligate miſcreants never were nor can be collected together.

On the next day I propoſed to take a walk about the fort, but they would not let me out at the gate.

However, on the day following I inſiſted upon it, and they threatened not to admit me again: but notwithſtanding, I ventured out, and having ſaddled my horſe, rode a great many miles round the country,

country, without ſeeing a ſingle inhabitant, or Indian.

I returned to the fort at night, and was admitted; having acquainted them with my obſervations, and the diſtance I had reconnoitred around, two young men propoſed to accompany me next day, to viſit their father's plantations.

Accordingly we three ſet out from the fort early in the morning, and went to one of their plantations, which was five miles off, where we found every thing unmoleſted, only the domeſtic animals were almoſt ſtarved, and appeared rejoiced to ſee us.

The other plantation was twelve miles diſtant from this, and we viſited it alſo; here a tame bear, which had been left, diverted us very much with his antic geſtures, and his odd manner of ſaluting his two-legged brothers whom I had brought with me from the fort: but as, ſooner or later, all, even the deareſt of friends, muſt part, ſo muſt they, and the ſorrow

on

on the occaſion was great, even as their joy had been, when they met.

We viſited ſeveral other plantations, and the two young men concluding to return next day to their plantations to remain, we turned our horſes heads towards the fort, where we arrived in the evening.

Having made our report concerning the occurrences of the day, and the appearance of peace and tranquility we had every where perceived, it was propoſed for each perſon to return to his reſpective habitation on the day following; but timidity, diſtruſt, and cowardice ſtarted a number of objections, which occaſioned many warm debates on the ſubject; and at length it was concluded on to wait a few days longer, but in the mean time to diſpatch two men on each quarter, to ſee that all was quiet, and that there was no appearance of Indians.

For my own part I determined on ſetting out early next morning to purſue my jour-

ney

ney to Kentucky, having hired one of the young men, who accompanied me in our ride round the fort, to attend me in this journey, which he undertook to do with great alacrity, and seemed as eager to see that celebrated place as myself.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Situation of the Fort. Smith's River. Soil. Ginseng. Snake-root. Prices of Wheat, Corn, Beef, Pork, Tobacco, &c. Culture of Indian Corn. Its great and universal Utility.

THIS fort is situated on a small eminence that commands a very fine view of Smith's River for several miles, and of the confluence of Beaver Creek; but it is only the low grounds of the river and creek on the north-east side that can be perceived; the lofty timber on the opposite banks of the river, as usual all over America, effectually prevents any greater distance being seen.

But the eminence, the fort is built upon, is by no means the highest in the vicinity; there are many, and some of them almost close to it, that altogether command it.

The low land on Smith's River and Beaver Creek is indeed excellent, but narrow: the high ground and hills, being very near the river on each side, are exceedingly

ceedingly rocky and ſteril; the roads, or rather paths, are as bad as can be conceived; and the houſes and plantations are very indifferent indeed; but there is a great abundance of game, ſuch as deer, bears, ſome panthers, wild cats, otters, raccoons, oppoſſums, wild turkeys, and all kinds of ſquirrels.

The growth of the timber on the low land is very large, but not equal to that on the low grounds of the Roanoak and the Dan: the ſoil is of a deep black colour, and rather light, but exceeding deep; however it is liable to be flooded.

The river is about fifty yards wide, but very much interrupted with old logs, large trees, &c. that have been brought down the ſtream by the floods after heavy rains; it is not rapid, but flows calmly along, in a ſmooth, gentle current, and it is fordable but in a very few places.

The high land, as I obſerved before, is very rough, rocky, and poor; ſome of it is rather light, and there is abundance of the valuable plant, or rather root of Gin-

ſeng found and gathered in the woods, which in China is accounted a ſpecific for almoſt every diſorder incident to the human frame, and ſells for more than its weight in gold; here it ſells for about fifteen pence currency, or a ſhilling ſterling a pound.

The inhabitants, and negroes, likewiſe find and dig great quantities of ſnake-root, of each of the different kinds, which they alſo ſell for nearly the ſame price as ginſeng: this was exported to Europe, being ſent by land-carriage to James River, where it was ſhipped, and Britiſh manufactures were taken in exchange for this as well as the reſt of all their commodities, at very advanced prices.

They alſo ſell great numbers of deer ſkins and furs; but the principal of their exports are hogs, which they raiſe in great numbers, and drive them, in droves of one, two, three, four, and five hundred together, to the falls of James River, and of Roanoak, and to the more populous parts of the country, as well as the ſea-ports.

Some

Some few black cattle are alſo brought from this part of the frontiers, but in no conſiderable numbers.

Deer ſkins, dried or cured with the hair on, are ſold for about a ſhilling ſterling a pound. Raccoon ſkins, about ſix-pence each. Otter ſkins, about two or three ſhillings each. Beaver, &c. in proportion.

Their hogs they ſell alive, for about twelve ſhillings an hundred weight, that is, if they are bought there; but when driven down the country, they coſt about twenty ſhillings ſterling a hundred weight.

Black cattle ſell nearly for the ſame prices.

Veniſon is exceſſively cheap, generally about half-a-crown for a whole deer, excluſive of the ſkin.

There is alſo a conſiderable quantity of tobacco cultivated here, which is almoſt all carried to James River, and ſells there at the rate generally of ſixteen, eighteen, or twenty ſhillings per hundred weight.

They make very little wheat, and uſe ſtill leſs; the general price of wheat there at

home is about half-a-crown per buſhel, which is the meaſure they ſell it by.

But the great ſupport of the country is Indian corn, with which they ſubſiſt themſelves, their negroes, their horſes, and fatten their hogs, after they are in good plight by feeding on the acorns in the woods, which are always called *Maſt* in America; of this there are ſome years amazing quantities, ſo that the hogs are frequently fattened with that alone, which they find themſelves in the woods; but the pork is always ſoft, and for that reaſon, people generally feed them ſome little time upon Indian corn, after they appear ſufficiently fatted with maſt.

Indian corn is the great ſtaff of life in America, and is meaſured by what is called the barrel there, which contains juſt five buſhels, and the price then was a dollar, or four ſhillings and ſix pence ſterling per barrel.

This however was accounted dear, for the general price is only three ſhillings per barrel, which is not quite ſeven pence

halfpenny a buſhel: the cheapeſt grain perhaps in the world; for it weighs from fifty to fifty-five pounds each the buſhel.

As the culture of Indian corn is unknown in Great Britain, or at any rate but very little practiſed, a brief deſcription of it may not be unacceptable.

Indian corn, which is in ſome places called Maize, is nearly as large as horſe beans, being ſomewhat flat and flinty, of a yellowiſh white colour, ſometimes red, and ſometimes ſpeckled.

It is contained in ears from eight to ſixteen inches long, and from four to ſeven inches in circumference. In the middle is a hard ſubſtance called a cob, on which the grains grow cloſe together, at right angles from it, and not obliquely like wheat, barley, or rye.

On each ear there are always either twelve or ſixteen rows, and the whole is covered with a thick ſtrong white huſk, compoſed of three or four leaves or coats, which adhere to the whole very cloſely,

and are each ſomething more than the whole ear in length, to which they are united at the ſtalk, or lower extremity.

Indian corn is neither ſown, nor reaped. It is planted and gathered.

The ground for it, is firſt plowed over one way, quite fluſh; this is croſſed by furrows five or ſix feet aſunder, and theſe by other furrows at right angles at ſimilar diſtances, which divide the whole field into ſquares of five or ſix feet every way.

In each croſſing, three grains of corn are dropped, and covered with a hand hoe; this is performed ſome time in the month of May, and is termed *Planting of Corn*.

After it has ſprung up above the ground, when any is miſſing, or not come up, proceeding either from bad ſeed, or worms, vermin, and inſects that deſtroy the tender ſhoots, the hills are ſupplied with freſh grains again, which is denominated *Replanting the Corn*.

It is afterwards plowed acroſs the firſt furrows: the next plowing is acroſs theſe; and

and ſo on alternately, until it is all plowed five times over; then it is weeded and chopped around the roots of the ſtalks with broad hand hoes; this is called *Laying by the Corn.*

In Auguſt and September it begins to bloſſom and ſhoot out ears, which is called *To taſſel,* becauſe beautiful, ſhining, ſilky taſſels come out from the extreme end of the ears, and hang waving down.

Theſe ears proceed from the joints, from the height of three to ſix feet above the ground.

There is alſo another beautiful bloſſom at the very top of the whole, which is in reality the male flowers, or farina, as the elegant ſhining ſilky taſſels are the female; for this plant is both male and female in itſelf.

Theſe taſſels are as ſoft as ſilk, and of all different colours appearing very bright gloſſy and delightful to the eye.

This ſtate of it is denominated *The Corn being in Silks.*

It has been diſcovered that the fine farina from the male flowers, being carried by the wind and agitation of the air upon the female ſilky taſſels, impregnate them, and fill the grain in the ears; for there is a taſſel or ſilk proceeds from every ſingle grain; and experiments have evinced, that one male will impregnate five hundred plants, when all the reſt of the tops, which contain the male bloſſoms, are cut off, and only the female, or ears in ſilks are left.

It has been experienced alſo, that if there be a field of corn within a mile or two of one where all the tops or male bloſſoms are cut off entirely, yet ſtill the ears will be impregnated and filled by the male farina brought by the agitation of the air and the winds; but the ears will not be all full.

But it has likewiſe been diſcovered by experiments, that if all the tops or male bloſſoms are cut off in a field of corn, and there be not another field within ſix or ſeven miles, the whole field will be uſeleſs; there

there will be no grain on the ears, which will not fill, becauſe the female part of the plant has not been impregnated by the male.

The height of the ſtalks, when in a ſtate of perfect maturity, is from eight to twelve feet and upwards; with joints at the diſtance of eight or ten inches from each other, at each of which are two leaves or blades, from one to two feet in length, and two or three inches broad.

The male flowers, as has been juſt obſerved, grow at the top of all, and appear ſomething like to the heads or ears of rice, or large oats, after the fine farina is blown off.

The female flowers are rather below the middle of the ſtalk, at the extremity of the ears which proceed from the joints in that part of the ſtalk.

In October the blades, or leaves, which are broad and long, are pulled off, and tied in bundles, being left in the field to cure, and are excellent provender for horſes; for thoſe who are accuſtomed to this

this will not eat the very fineſt hay; then the tops are alſo cut off juſt above the ear.

And during the latter part of November, and all December, after the froſts have come on, the corn is gathered, two, three, and four ears from every ſtalk, and the ſtalks, each of which is generally above an inch in diameter, are left ſtanding in the field.

A buſhel of corn will plant near twenty acres; and on the richeſt lands twenty acres will produce two hundred and fifty barrels, or one thouſand two hundred and fifty buſhels. A moſt aſtoniſhing increaſe indeed!

The land is firſt plowed with two horſes in the plough, becauſe the labour is then harder; but every ploughing beſides is done with one horſe only; and one plough will work between thirty and forty acres in Indian corn.

The whole of this excellent grain is uſeful, and there is no part of it ſhould be thrown away.

The

The leaves cured are excellent provender for horſes ; the tops, ſtalks, and huſks are exceeding fine fodder for cattle, and the grain itſelf ſupports the inhabitants themſelves, both white and black, beſides feeding their horſes, and fattening their hogs.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Set out for Kentucky. Viſit the Summit of the Wart Mountain. Diſcription of a moſt extenſive, grand, and elegant Perſpective. Ideas raiſed in the Mind.

AFTER this long digreſſion on the culture of Indian corn, the grand ſtaff of life throughout this continent, I ſhall proceed with an account of my journey to Kentucky; for my white ſavage and I ſet out from the fort early next morning.

I had procured rifles, ammunition, and Indian dreſſes for us both, which are by far the moſt convenient for travelling in that country; as alſo blankets to cover us, as we ſhould be obliged to ſleep in the woods every night; beſides bells for our horſes, to enable us to hear them at a diſtance when they were turned looſe to feed, and hobbles, or ſpancils, made of ſtrong leather, and faſtened on their legs, to prevent

prevent them from wandering out of our reach where we remained all night.

I myſelf was provided with pocket compaſſes before I came here, and had beſides a very juſt idea of the geography of the country.

I muſt beg permiſſion at this place to correct an error I have obſerved in all the maps of that country, which give the name of Smith's River to the Stanton, for this is a very great miſtake, as Smith's River is that which in the maps is named the Irwine River; and it was on the north-eaſt ſide of it, near the confluence of Beaver Creek, where the fort I juſt left was erected; the whole country round, for a very great diſtance, being now denominated Pitſylvania county, which is the ſouth-weſtern frontier of Virginia.

Having heard much of the Wart Mountain, one of the firſt, but moſt conſiderably of the Aleganies, or rather the Blue Mountains, for height, as well as for its amazing extent of perſpective, I determined

mined to viſit it, and aſcend the ſummit thereof on my way; for which reaſon we bent our courſe towards it, and croſſed Smith's River about nine miles above the fort, at a very bad ford, which was deep and dangerous.

After travelling through an exceedingly rough country, and in extreme bad paths indeed, frequently without any, as alſo croſſing ſeveral deep creeks, or water-courſes, we found ourſelves at night beginning to aſcend the Wart Mountain, which is upon the ſouth-weſt ſide of Smith's River; and we alighted on an agreeable and convenient ſpot, near the ſide of a brook of water, to put up for the night, turning our horſes out with their bells and hobbles on, to prevent our loſing them.

We ſtruck up and kindled a large fire, gathered leaves for us to lie upon, eat heartily of our jerked (or dried) veniſon, drank ſome brandy and water, (for we had brought a pretty large ſtock along us), wrapped ourſelves up in our blan-

kets,

kets, and lay down under a large tree, with our feet towards the fire; having travelled about forty-six miles that day.

I cannot undertake to pronounce whether it is owing to the ſalubrity and elaſticity of the air, thus in free circulation, and totally unconfined, but certain it is, that I never found myſelf dejected, indiſpoſed, or low-ſpirited in the morning, after paſſing the night in this manner.

I aroſe in the morning as gay and chearful as a lark, and ſet out at the dawn of day to aſcend the mountain, with my mind filled with the moſt agreeable expectations of the vaſt pleaſure I ſhould enjoy from the amazingly great extent of the perſpective from the ſummit, which is reckoned equal, if not ſuperior to any, even the higheſt and moſt commanding inland ſituation in the world, at a diſtance from the ſea.

As we approached the ſummit we found the journey exceedingly troubleſome, the aſcent becoming more and more

more perpendicular, until at length we were obliged to alight from our horſes, and lead them after us.

Even this we found the greateſt difficulty in performing, and we ſhould not have attempted it had there been any place where we could have left our horſes with the leaſt certain proſpect, or indeed probability of being able to find them again when we returned.

The height of the Wart Mountain may be about ſix or eight miles; but the extreme ſteepneſs thereof towards the ſummit retards the progreſs of a traveller ſo very much, that it is abſolutely a ſevere day's journey to viſit the higheſt part and return, making but a very ſhort ſtay to enjoy the beauties of the almoſt unbounded and wonderful perſpective.

After many halts we reached the ſummit of the mountain about eleven o'clock, and were then amply rewarded for the great perils and fatigue we had undergone to attain it.

Lan-

Language fails in attempting to deſcribe this moſt aſtoniſhing and almoſt unbounded perſpective.

The mind was filled with a reverential awe, but at the ſame time the ideas, and I had almoſt ſaid the very ſoul was ſenſibly enlarged.

The reflection on our own littleneſs did not diminiſh our intellectual faculties nor conſequence; and the mind would boldly ſoar over the vaſt extent of the earth and water around, and even above the globe itſelf, to contemplate on, and admire the amazing works of the great Creator of all.

In ſhort, the ſtrong, mighty, pointed, and extended ſenſations of the mind, at this aſtoniſhing period are far beyond the power of human language to deſcribe, or convey any idea of.

On the eaſt you could perceive the deep and broken chaſms where the rivers Dan, Mayho, Smith's, Banniſter's, and Stanton direct their courſes; ſome

raging in vaſt torrents, and ſome gliding in ſilent gentle meanders.

On the north you ſee the Black Water, a branch of the Stanton; and the break in the mountains where the Fluvannah, a vaſt branch of the James, paſs through in a north-eaſt direction.

On the north-weſt you will obſerve with great aſtoniſhment and pleaſure, the tremendous and abrupt break in the Alegany Mountains, through which the mighty waters of the New River, and the Great Kanhawah paſs, the latter directing its courſe northward, a diſtance no leſs than two hundred miles from its ſource, where the New River meets the Green Briar river which comes from the north-eaſt, a diſtance alſo of an hundred and fifty miles.

After the confluence, being then named the Great Kanhawah, it proceeds weſtward inclining to the north, until it falls into the mighty river Ohio, after a courſe of more than two hundred miles from the junction.

On the weſt you can very plainly diſcover the three forks or branches of the Holſton, where they break through the Great Alegany Mountains, forming ſtriking and awful chaſms.

And ſtill beyond them you may obſerve Clinch's River, or Peliſippi, that is almoſt equal to all the three branches of the Holſton, with which it unites, after a courſe of three hundred and fifty or four hundred miles: the length of the courſe of the Holſton being alſo above four hundred miles before they unite and form the mighty river Hogohegee or Cherokee, which afterwards flows a courſe of two hundred and fifty miles in extent before it falls into the Ohio, to which it is at leaſt equal, in the vaſt quantity of water it contains, as well as the fertility of the ſoil on its banks, and far ſuperior to it in the excellence of the climate it paſſes through.

On the ſouth you can ſee the Dan, the Catawba, the Yadkin, and the Haw, breaking through the mighty mountains

that appear in confuſed heaps, and piled on each other in almoſt every direction.

Throughout the whole of this amazing and moſt extenſive perſpective, there is not the leaſt feature or trace of art or improvement to be diſcovered.

All are the genuine effects of nature alone, and laid down on her moſt extended and grandeſt ſcale.

Contemplating thereon fills the eye, engroſſes the mind, and enlarges the ſoul.

It totally abſorbs the ſenſes, overwhelms all the faculties, expands even the grandeſt ideas beyond all conception, and occaſions you almoſt to forget that you are a human creature.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Deſcend the Mountain. Croſs the New River. Middle Fork of Holſton. Arrive at Stahlmakers. Croſs the North Branch of Holſton. Croſs Clinches River. Aſcend the great Alegany.

I Remained on the ſummit of this mountain until two o'clock in the afternoon, but was almoſt as much ſurpriſed at the inattention and diſregard of the young back-wood's-man to the beauties and grandeur of the perſpective, as I was charmed with the enjoyment of it myſelf; for he went down along one of the ſides of the mountain, and was abſent from me above an hour; in that time I heard the report of a gun, and when he returned he brought a fine wild turkey which he had ſhot; and he carried it along with us in order to dreſs for ſupper where we ſhould halt at night.

We deſcended the mountain on the north-weſt ſide, and ſtaid all night at the border of a beautiful ſmall ſavannah or

meadow, a little way from the baſe of the mountain, having turned our horſes out as uſual, kindled a fire, roaſted our turkey, and made a delicious repaſt upon it. What remained we ſaved for the next day's proviſion.

We ſet out on our journey on the following morning, and ſteered our courſe as nearly weſt-north-weſt as the mountains would permit us, intending to croſs the great Blue ridge, or South mountain, through a gap that is only uſed by the hunters, which is about twenty miles ſouth-weſt of that which the great trading path goes over.

By this way we propoſed to fall on the head waters of Little River, which runs into the New River juſt above the croſſing place, and thereby ſave a diſtance of more than twenty-five miles travelling.

In this attempt we were fortunate enough to ſucceed, after a moſt fatiguing day's journey of forty miles at leaſt, and after croſſing a number of large ſtreams of water.

We

We halted for the night on the ſide of a large rivulet, which we conjectured to be either Little River itſelf, or ſome of the waters of it, having croſſed the great Blue ridge at a moſt diſagreeable and dangerous gap in the afternoon.

Here we killed another wild turkey, and dreſſed it for ſupper as before; indeed they were ſo very numerous that we could have eaſily ſubſiſted a company of men upon them, and might kill almoſt any number we pleaſed.

Next morning we ſet out early, and travelled down the north ſide of the rivulet, which we found to be Little River, until we arrived at New River, and at laſt came to the ford.

The New River is broad, deep and rapid, frequently impaſſable, and always dangerous.

However we croſſed it in ſafety, though with great difficulty, and hazard of being carried down with the ſtream, and we looked out for a convenient ſpot on the

weſt ſide, where we now were, to remain on for the night.

This we found neceſſary to do, both becauſe our horſes were greatly fatigued in croſſing the river, and alſo to dry our cloaths which had all been ſoaked in the water; although we had not travelled more than twenty-five or thirty miles during this day.

The low ground on the New River is narrow, but exceedingly rich and fertile; the high land is alſo very fine in many places, but exceſſively broken, rocky, and mountainous.

The timber on the high land is very large and lofty, and that on the low ground is almoſt equal to the prodigious heavy trees on the Roanoak, already deſcribed.

The New River, which is only the upper part of the great Kanhawah, not being navigable, nor indeed the Kanhawah itſelf, the extreme roughneſs of the country, and difficulty of acceſs to it, the roads or rather paths being not only almoſt impaſſable, but totally impoſſible ever to be rendered

rendered even tolerable, by any human efforts, will not only greatly retard the ſettlement of this country, but will always reduce the price and value of the land, be it ever ſo rich and fertile.

In the morning, our horſes and ourſelves being very much refreſhed, we ſet out again on our journey; and after travelling ten or twelve miles, croſſed a pretty large water-courſe named Peak's Creek; and ſoon afterwards a large branch of Reedy Creek.

In the afternoon we croſſed another great ridge of the Alegany mountains at a gap, and in the evening came to the waters of the middle fork of the Holſton, where we halted for the night; having travelled this day near fifty miles, and over a vaſt quantity of excellent land.

Next morning we purſued our journey, and travelled down the ſide of the middle fork of the Holſton, which we croſſed no leſs than three times this day; and at night came to Stahlmaker's, where a few people, indeed all the inhabitants, had alſo

erected

erected a kind of a wretched ſtockade fort for protection againſt the Indians; but they had all left it a few days before our arrival, and returned to their reſpective homes.

Here we remained for two days at the old Dutchman's houſe for reſt and refreſhment for ourſelves and our horſes, which we had really very much need of, and alſo to make enquiry concerning our future route.

The land on the Holſton is certainly excellent, and fertile in the higheſt degree; the climate alſo is delightful.

But the value of eſtates here cannot be conſiderable for many years, perhaps centuries to come, for the ſame reaſons that have been mentioned to affect thoſe on the New River,

Here we gained intelligence of a nearer way to Kentucky than that commonly made uſe of, which had very lately been diſcovered, viz. by croſſing Clinche's River about ſixty miles from Stahlmaker's, going over the great Ridge of the Alegany

or

or Apalachian mountains, at a gap which had been uſed only by a few of the beſt hunters, and falling down on the waters of the Warrior's Branch, a river that runs into Kentucky.

With this route pretty exactly laid down we ſet out from the Dutchman's houſe on the third morning after our arrival, and after travelling over a vaſt quantity of exceedingly ſtrong rich land covered with lofty timber, we reached the banks of the north branch of the Holſton, croſſed the river, and put up for the night; having travelled that day more than thirty miles.

The ford of this branch of the Holſton is, if poſſible, worſe than any we have hitherto met with, and is indeed extremely dangerous.

But we were ſo familiarized to danger and fatigue, as to regard any thing of that nature but little.

On the next morning we ſet out on our journey by the route which we had been directed to purſue, and at noon arrived at the ſummit of a vaſt chain of moun-

mountains which ſeparate the north branch of the Holſton from Clinche's River.

Here I had the pleaſure of enjoying an extenſive, wild, and romantic view, particularly that ſtupenduous ridge of the Alegany, or Apalachian mountains, which is the chief and moſt lofty of the whole.

It was rendered the more intereſting to me by reflecting that I muſt croſs it on my journey, our route being directly over it; and the ſummit of this vaſt chain was at the leaſt ſixty miles from the ridge whereon we then ſtood.

We made no unneceſſary delay however on this commanding ſpot, but deſcended the mountain, and purſued our route with all the expedition we could; and we arrived on the banks of Clinche's River late in the evening, ſo that we could not venture to croſs the ford that night.

This circumſtance was a very great inconvenience to us, becauſe we always got our cloaths wet in paſſing theſe great and rapid torrents of water, which ſituation is particularly diſagreeable in the morn-

morning, becauſe we muſt either delay our time by making fires to dry them, or travel with them all wet upon us, which is the moſt unpleaſant of the two, as well as being prejudicial to health.

Theſe vaſt ridges of mountains which we croſſed rendered this day's journey extremely ſevere and fatiguing both for ourſelves and our horſes, although we did not travel more than about thirty miles.

In the morning we undertook the hazardous taſk of fording Clinche's River, and accompliſhed it after ſeveral plunges, as uſual, over our heads; neither did we halt to dry our cloaths until noon, when we reſted at the ſide of a ſavannah, ſpread all our wet cloaths on the graſs to dry in the ſun, which was then intenſely hot, turned our horſes out to graze, and after finiſhing a hearty meal, lay ourſelves down to ſleep.

Here we remained for two hours, and then aroſe exceedingly refreſhed, and purſued our journey.

On

On the evening we had reached half way up the ſtupendous weſtermoſt ridge of the Alegany mountains, the laſt, greateſt, and loftieſt of the whole.

Here we remained all night, concluding to attempt the ſteepeſt and moſt difficult aſcent in the morning, when our horſes were refreſhed and ſtrong, and ourſelves alſo leſs fatigued; for we always alighted and led our horſes up theſe prodigious ſteep, and perilous aſcents.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLI.

Croſs the vaſt Alegany Mountains. Fall upon the Warrior's Branch. Croſs the Ouſiotto Mountains. Impenetrable Thickets of Laurel. River of Kentucky. Arrive at the famed new Settlement on Kentucky.

WE purſued our journey up the mountain next morning, but the ſun was ſeveral hours high before we could poſſibly reach the ſummit, notwithſtanding we made all imaginable diſpatch.

This ridge of the Alegany or Apalachian mountain, is indeed of a moſt ſtupendous and aſtoniſhing height, and commands a proſpect proportionably extenſive.

I took a retroſpective view, with ſatisfaction and pleaſure, of the vaſt chain of mountains beyond Clinche's River, which I had croſſed: and I looked forward, with intereſting anxiety and eagerneſs, towards the Ouſiotto great ridge of mountains, which I had ſtill to paſs over, and were at leaſt fifty or ſixty miles diſtant before me.

The

The ſummit of this ridge, the moſt lofty of all the Aleganys, is near a mile wide, and conſiſts of excellent ſtrong rich land, of a deep red, or a dark reddiſh brown colour, with very large tall timber; and there are ſprings of water almoſt on the very ſummit of the mountain.

But as ſoon as we began to deſcend on the north-weſt ſide, we found the declivity exceedingly ſteep.

Yet the aſcent on the ſouth-eaſt ſide where we came up was regular and gradual conſiſting generally of good land, and covered with lofty timber.

This north-weſt ſide was almoſt bare of ſoil; the trees and all the vegetation poor, ſcanty, and miſerable; and quite incumbered with rocks and looſe ſtones, which exceedingly impeded our way, and retarded our progreſs.

By theſe obſtacles this day's journey was rendered intolerably diſagreeable and dangerous.

But we forgot our toils, perils, and fatigues, when at night we reached the

waters

waters of the Warrior's branch, where we halted and remained until morning; having travelled about twenty-five miles during the day.

At the enſuing dawn we again renewed our journey, directing our courſe down the Warrior's branch until we reached the foot of the great ridge of the Ouaſiotto mountains, where we put up for the night; having travelled above thirty miles this day.

On the morning following we began to aſcend the mountain, and reached the ſummit in about three hours.

This laſt chain of mountains is covered with laurel, and ſo exceſſively thick in many places as to be abſolutely impenetrable.

Here the great maſs of mountains terminated on the north-weſt; excepting ſome ſpurs of the mountains that ſometimes extended ſeveral miles into the more champaign country.

The ſummit of this ridge is not more than a quarter of a mile over, and the

ground as well as the growth of the timber is very poor and miſerable, being almoſt entirely covered with univerſal and impenetrable thickets of laurel.

From the brow or edge of the ſummit, looking back we could ſee the huge Alegany mountains which we had croſſed; and on the other edge of the ſummit, as we advanced, I was delighted with a view, novel indeed to me at this time, and uncommonly beautiful and pleaſing. For the eye was now relieved from being conſtantly filled with the vaſt exuberances of nature, which alone it had beheld for ſo many days, by viewing a beautiful champaign country, covered with prodigious woods 'tis true, but at the ſame in full verdure, and interſected with vaſt rivers, and prodigious water-courſes, which all terminate in the mighty majeſtic Ohio.

Some of the courſe of this amazing and moſt beautiful river was alſo to be diſcovered by a chaſm or break in the woods, where it flowed in awful ſolemn ſilence.

I en-

I enjoyed infinite delight in viewing the beauties of the perſpective here for a conſiderable time, and at laſt left it with equal pleaſure, eager to penetrate into that beautiful country, which I had beheld with ſuch delicious gratification at a diſtance.

I deſcended the Ouaſiotto mountains, and in a ſhort time fell into the great War path, which has been uſed by the Indians time out of mind.

This afforded me very great ſatisfaction, for the road was now much better than any I had travelled in ever ſince I had firſt entered the mountains, and thereby enabled me to gain greater diſtances in each day's journey.

But although we had now left the mountains, and although before when I beheld all this country to the weſtward of them it appeared as a beautiful level extended far beyond the view, and all the horizon was as ſtraight and even as a line, or as the ocean itſelf, yet now we had deſcended into it we found it extremely broken, with abundance of rocks, and thickly interſected with water-courſes.

However nothing could be more pleaſant than the pure and limpid ſtreams, that either glided along in ſweet and ſilent meanders; or tumbled and daſhed from rock to rock, juſt ſufficiently to give pleaſure without an alloy of fear or pain, as pellucid and tranſparent as cryſtal.

I obſerved that almoſt all the rocks, not only here, but every where between the mountains, conſiſted of a blackiſh grey lime ſtone; and where that did not prevail, the earth, rocks and every looſe ſtone appeared to be ſtrongly and richly impregnated with iron ore, which certainly abounds throughout this inland part of America.

We ſlept that night on the banks of a creek, that runs into the Warrior's branch, at the diſtance of about a mile from the river itſelf, as we diſcovered in the morning when we went to look for our horſes to proceed on our journey.

The Warrior's branch is a conſiderable river, and after its confluence with two more rivers, neither of which is ſo large as itſelf, forms the Kentucky which is indeed a very

a very fine river, wide, deep, and with a very gentle current gliding along almoſt imperceptibly.

The whole length of the Kentucky, including its meanders, from the ſource of the Warrior's branch in the Alegany mountains, to the confluence of the Kentucky with the Ohio, is certainly between four and five hundred miles, containing a body of land on each ſide, that cannot be ſurpaſſed, and ſcarcely equalled by any in the univerſe, for fertility of ſoil, abundance of game, excellence of climate, and every other beauty and advantage imaginable, excepting the difficulty of acceſs to it.

In five more eaſy days journeys, the particulars of which are not worth relating, as being not materially different from what has been already mentioned, we at length arrived at the famed ſettlement near the mouth of Kentucky, on the eighth day of June, after having travelled at leaſt four hundred and ninety miles, from the fort on Smith's River, to this place, in nineteen days.

CHAP. XLII.

The famed Settlement of Kentucky. Mr. Henderſon no military Man. Injudicious Forts. A fine commanding Situation. Want of Subordination in America. Hardy Race, but illiberal. Elephants Bones on the Ohio.

I Was ſoon directed to the houſe of Mr. Henderſon, where I found a moſt hoſpitable and kind reception.

We walked over his plantation, which was really a very fine one; and being furniſhed with freſh horſes we rode round ſeveral of the improvements in the neighbourhood.

He recollected me perfectly, but appeared very much ſurpriſed at the hazards, as well as the fatigues I had encountered to pay him and his ſettlement this viſit, at this critical time, which it ſeems had been apprehended by every one to be particularly dangerous.

All the inhabitants of this ſettlement had alſo prepared for an Indian war, having

having erected three ſtockaded forts, into which they had thrown themſelves, their wives, and families; but had remained only a very ſhort time within them, and had left them and returned to their reſpective habitations not more than about a week or ten days before my arrival, which totally diſſipated all their remaining apprehenſions of danger or diſtruſt.

Almoſt every houſe in the whole ſettlement was built of logs, which are proof againſt ſmall arms, but being covered as well as entirely conſtructed of wood, nothing would be more eaſy for an enemy than to ſet them on fire, which prevents any idea of defence againſt ſuch numbers as might be able to approach cloſe to them.

The three ſtockaded forts alſo, though intended to cover the country againſt the attacks of the Indians, were neither calculated for that purpoſe, nor indeed were they tenable againſt an enemy of the leaſt military knowledge, whoſe power

or force might enable them to command the open country; for neither of the forts either communicated with, nor ſupported the other, at leaſt what they intended as means of communication and ſupport defeated the very purpoſe they expected it to promote.

The impropriety and total unfitneſs of theſe forts as places of defence I ſoon convinced Mr. Henderſon of, as well as the reſt of the principal inhabitants, and pointed out a commanding ſpot of ground to erect a fortification on, if ever they ſhould again have ſuch an occaſion; which was indeed abſolutely neceſſary, in their ſituation, for every reaſon.

It was a peninſula, containing above an hundred acres of rich low land, ſurrounded with the river Kentucky, and a large creek, on three ſides, and on the neck of the peninſula, or rather juſt within it, there was a remarkably high and ſteep hill, which appeared to be compoſed of a ſolid rock very ſlightly covered with ſoil, but abundantly with looſe ſtones.

Juſt

Juſt before the neck of the peninſula, in a ſmall circle round the bottom of the hill, there was a large moraſs or ſwamp, broad, deep and miry, which was covered and overflowed with water, after heavy rains, as well as during the periodical floods of the Kentucky.

In ſhort nature ſeemed to have formed this commanding eminence for a moſt delightful ſeat, as well as for the purpoſe of defence; and it required but very little aſſiſtance of art to render it extremely ſtrong.

Mr. Henderſon was beyond all doubt a man of a vaſt and enterpriſing genius; he might be an excellent judge, as well as a great legiſlator; but he was certainly not at all calculated for arms, being void of any talents that way, and totally deficient even of a military eye, judgment, or diſpoſition.

I have obſerved that throughout all the back country, indeed I had almoſt ſaid throughout all America, there ſeems to be

be no ſuch thing as any idea of ſubordination, or difference of ranks in life; excepting from the weaker to the ſtronger; and from the ſlaves to the whites.

In any of their forts it was all anarchy and confuſion, and you could not diſcover what perſon commanded, for in fact no perſon did actually command entirely.

This total want of ſubordination renders the whole country particularly diſagreeable to ſtrangers, ſuch eſpecially as have been accuſtomed to the poliſhed intercourſe of Europe; for in the back-woods, and frontiers eſpecially, there is no degree of inſolence, impertinence and rudeneſs but they think themſelves juſtifiable in practiſing, either to one another, or towards ſuch as may come among them, and in a manner, as well as to an extent, that could not be credited by Europeans, had not ſo many ſeen and experienced it.

Mr. Henderſon had epitomiſed, and ſimplified the laws of England, for the government and internal police of his ſettlement.

Magi-

Magiſtrates were choſen by the inhabitants, but with his approbation; and ſuch diſputes as could not be decided by one or two magiſtrates were determined by ſomething like a jury, whoſe deciſions were alſo regulated, and indeed in a great meaſure directed likewiſe by Mr. Henderſon himſelf.

Although the inhabitants are in reality a rude, barbarous and unpoliſhed ſet of men, yet you will frequently find pleaſure in their converſation; their ideas are bold and ſpirited, but their ſentiments are not liberal.

However, they are certainly a ſenſible, enterpriſing, hardy, unpoliſhed race, yet open, free and hoſpitable.

Puſillanimouſneſs, cowardice and mean ſpirit appear not there; hitherto they have not reached ſo far, and as yet are generally confined on the eaſt of the mountains.

In our rides through, and around this ſettlement we viſited the confluence of the Kentucky with the Ohio, and ſtrolled

for

for many miles on the banks of the laſt mentioned river alſo.

Near the confluence is the place on the banks of the Ohio where the ſkeletons of nine elephants, as they are called, though many ſay erroneouſly, were diſcovered; which has given riſe to ſuch multitudes of conjectures among the naturaliſts and philoſophers, without one of them being able to account for this very ſingular and extraordinary circumſtance in a manner reconcilable to common ſenſe and reaſon.

For there certainly is none of the ſpecies (of elephants) now in the whole continent of North and South America.

It has been lately denied that they are the bones of elephants; and they are aſſerted to be the bones of ſome other very large animal, of which likewiſe at preſent none of the ſpecies is to be found.

I would not venture to pronounce upon my weak judgment, whether they are the bones of elephants or not, I mean

thoſe

thoſe few that I ſaw there, however I am very certain that they are much larger than belong to any other quadruped in the world, that I ever ſaw or heard of.

But to what ſpecies they did belong, or in what manner they came there, is more than I can undertake to aſcertain, or even to gueſs at.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

The Rivers Kentucky and Ohio. Woods and Inclosures. Game. Wild Beasts and Fish. A general Account of the Indians. Their Character. Dispositions and Numbers.

THE breadth of the Kentucky at the confluence is between three and four hundred yards; and that of the Ohio between eight hundred and nine hundred yards.

The low ground on both rivers is excellent; on the Ohio it is about a mile wide; on the Kentucky about half as much.

The high land also between the rivers is exceedingly rich, and of a reddish brown colour, with large lofty straight timber.

The soil of the low grounds is a very dark brown, almost a black.

The woods consist of walnut, poplar yellow and white, red-bud, hiccory, sassafras, wild cherry, oaks of many different kinds, such as red oak, Spanish oak, white-oak,

oak, black oak, ſcrubby oak or black-jacks, cheſnut-oak, willow-oak, and live-oak, maple, black gum, ſweet gum, ſycamore, horn-beam, dog-wood, pine, cheſnut, beech, holly, maple, cedar, and many other kinds peculiar to the country, all of an aſtoniſhing ſize, eſpecially in the low grounds, many trees being twelve and fifteen feet diameter in the trunk.

Theſe are uſeful in America for many purpoſes; for houſes, which are almoſt all conſtructed, and even covered entirely with wood; as alſo for fences and incloſures, theſe being all compoſed of what is called there *fence rails*, which are made out of trees cut or ſawed into lengths of eleven or twelve feet, which again are mauled or ſplit into rails from four to ſix inches thick.

When the incloſure is formed, every one croſſing the other obliquely at each end, in regular ſucceſſion and erection, theſe rails are laid zig-zag upon each other for ten or eleven rails in height, then ſtakes are put againſt each corner double acroſs each other, with the lower end ſunk a little into the earth,

and above theſe ſtakes, one, and ſometimes two more rails are laid, which lock up the whole, and keep it ſteady and firm.

Theſe incloſures are generally ſeven, eight and nine feet high, and are very ſtrong, as well as convenient, as they can be removed at any time to any other place where they may become more neceſſary.

Timber alſo ſerves for fuel, as no other is made uſe of, all over America.

The Ohio here has two banks on each ſide; when the river is low, the waters are confined within the loweſt banks; at this time the batteaux come up the ſtream, which is then ſmooth and gentle.

But when the periodical floods happen, which are always twice a year, the river is then ſwelled to the higheſt part of the upper banks, and runs with much greater rapidity and force, batteaux and veſſels of all kinds then deſcend with the ſtream, and frequently attain the diſtance of an hundred miles a day.

At ſuch times, ſhips of ſmall burthen might go down from Pittſburg to New Orleans,

Orleans, &c. in the greateſt ſafety, there being then ſeldom leſs than twenty-five feet water.

Theſe laſt banks the river very ſeldom or never overflows, therefore the land is little liable to be flooded.

Fiſh are innumerable in the rivers here, ſuch as perch, pike, eels, trout, roch, ſhads, old-wives, cat-fiſh, &c. &c. very fat, and ſo aſtoniſhingly large, credibility is endangered in relating it, for it is a fact, that of the cat-fiſh ſome are from twelve to eighteen inches between the eyes, and they are eaſily caught.

Game of all kinds is alſo exceedingly plenty; a man may kill ſix or eight deer every day, which many do merely for their ſkins, to the great injury and deſtruction of the ſpecies, and to the prejudice and public loſs of the community at large.

Wild turkeys, very large and fat, are almoſt beyond number, ſometimes five thouſand in a flock, of which a man may kill juſt as many as he pleaſes.

Elks are alſo very plenty, as well as racoons, oppoſſums, foxes and wolves. All theſe are found in the lofty woods, while in the ſavannahs or meadows buffaloes abound. And on the rivers multitudes of almoſt every kind of water fowl.

There was another animal that particularly engaged my attention, it being one of the ſame ſpecies that formerly I juſt had a glimpſe of among the rocks at the falls of James River, when it ſtruck me with the ſtrange idea of its reſembling a fiddle with feet.

Theſe animals are called here *Tarapens*, and are both of the land and water kinds. They are all however of the ſpecies of the turtle.

One kind of them bites very fiercely when incenſed, and keeps his hold ſo tenaciouſly that he will ſuffer decapitation before he quits it; theſe are called *Snapping Turtles*: but every ſpecies of theſe animals is ſo generally and perfectly known as to need no particular deſcription here.

Some

Some of them however are extremely beautiful, and are adorned with all the elegance of the brighteſt colouring, and the moſt fanciful engravings, or lines in regular and exact uniformity: this kind is perfectly inoffenſive and harmleſs, nor are they larger than two or three pounds weight.

Theſe animals will live, it is ſaid, for ſeveral hundred years. [See chap. vii. pages 51 and 52.]

During a ſtay of ſix weeks, I made many excurſions in the country around, and ſometimes went very conſiderable diſtances, ſo as to take ſeveral days in going and returning; and they were chiefly by water, on the Ohio, and its branches.

Finding every thing in tranquillity, and the Indians perfectly quiet and friendly, I accompanied a Mr. Mac Gowan to one of the Shawneſe towns, and another time to one of the neareſt towns of the Miniamis or Tweetwees.

Both theſe excurſions were by water; and I found that there was ſcarcely any variety in the manner of living and

cuſtoms of the different Indian nations or tribes; for ſeeing one nation will enable a perſon to form a very juſt and exact judgment of all the reſt.

So that the deſcription already given, of the Catawba Towns, reduced and enervated as they are, is an exact repreſentation of the Shawneſe, Miniamis, &c. as well as every other nation of theſe kind of Indians. [See chap. xxv. page 195.]

However ſome farther general obſervations on the different tribes and nations of Indians in North America may not be unacceptable here; but it is rather a difficult taſk for me to give the proper and diſtinct account of every different nation, and their reſpective characters, &c. friendly or otherwiſe, (their general character and diſpoſitions, as I have juſt remarked, being pretty much the ſame), being not only unacquainted with their language, but having never been longer than a few days together in their towns myſelf.

So

So what I relate muſt conſequently be chiefly from the information of others; however it is from ſuch authority as I judge may be depended upon.

The general character of the Indians is, that they are crafty, ſenſible, reſolute, very ſuſpicious, and very vindictive.

An Indian will travel on foot five hundred miles, through the woods, in night and darkneſs, ſecreting himſelf during the day to revenge an injury done to his relation, or to any one of his tribe.

However in every thing, but their cruel and revengeful diſpoſition, I admire and reſpect the real character of the native uncivilized and uncorrupted Indians.

Their ſentiments, with all the diſadvantages of poor inexpreſſive language, and of what is worſe, a flat, dull, and deficient interpretation, contain and convey the moſt elevated, noble, ſpirited, and juſt ideas, delivered in that beautiful and elegant ſimplicity and allegorical figures of explanation, which add dignity and grace

to the ſubject, and are ſo much admired in the Bible and ſacred ſcriptures of the Chriſtians, in the Jewiſh Talmud, the Mahometan Alcoran, and in all the oriental writings.

Their ſenſual appetites however they have no great command of, eſpecially inebriation, which they are particularly addicted to.

But the truth is, they are corrupted by the whites; for they copy after, and fall into *our vices*, *theſe* appearing in the moſt conſpicuous point of view; and I am afraid that our external *virtues* are ſo *few*, and even thoſe ſo *difficult to be diſcovered*, that the poor Indians cannot diſtinguiſh any of them to follow after.

They have alſo been ſo treacherouſly and barbarouſly maſſacred by the whites, and ſo often deceived by them, that the memory thereof is carefully preſerved, and handed down from father to ſon, in order to keep the riſing race ſufficiently on their guard againſt our future ſnares and treacherous deſigns.

This

This I look upon to be the true cauſe of the great caution, and complete diſſimulation the Indians are become ſo perfectly maſters of.

Indeed they have arrived at ſo eminent a degree of duplicity, and diſguiſing their ſentiments and intentions, that without the aſſiſtance of the arts of writing, reading, or committing their thoughts and tranſactions to record, they far excel us at our own weapons of ſubtilty, craft, and precaution.

In ſhort they are zealous ſteady friends; but rigorous implacable enemies, until ſatisfaction or reparation be made them for the injury they think they have ſuſtained.

However let their inclinations at this preſent time be either amicable or hoſtile, they all are not now ſufficiently powerful, either to contend againſt the whites in arms, or to do them any other material injury.

Whites who behave to them with uprightneſs and affability are greatly re-

ſpected by them, and obtain an amazing influence over them.

But they muſt firſt be ſufficiently convinced of the integrity and diſintereſtedneſs of the perſon; after which they are more at the command of ſuch a man than of one of their own chiefs.

Kings they have none, and the principal men of their nation become ſuch by their merit alone. Than this there is no other precedence, or difference of rank among Indians.

They enjoy the ſweets of liberty and freedom in the trueſt ſenſe, and certainly are not guilty of the many iniquitous and ſcandalous vices that diſgrace Chriſtianity and Europeans.

Their numbers on this ſide the Miſſiſſippi are conſiderable.

From the Gulf of Mexico to the Lakes of Canada incluſive, it is computed there may be about thirty-five thouſand warriors.

Beyond the Miſſiſſippi they are much more numerous, and many people, that have

have travelled there, ſay they are very open and hoſpitable.

The little intercourſe between them, in that diſtant country, and Europeans, renders them leſs ſuſpicious, leſs ſubtle and deſigning, and not ſo cruel and vindictive as thoſe on the eaſtern ſide of that extenſive river, whoſe greater experience, communication and tranſactions with the whites produce thoſe pernicious effects. A reproach more ſevere upon us than on them.

Here I muſt beg leave to make one particular obſervation; leſt, from what has been ſaid, it ſhould be thought that the Indians have a particular diſlike to Europeans more than to the whites born in America; but the very reverſe of this is the truth, for it is the white natives of the country that the Indians have the greateſt averſion to, and by whom they have been ſo often moſt treacherouſly and barbarouſly uſed.

The white Americans alſo have the moſt rancorous antipathy to the whole race

race of Indians; and nothing is more common than to hear them talk of extirpating them totally from the face of the earth, men, women, and children.

The Indians indeed do not appear to entertain any diſlike to the Britiſh or French, I mean thoſe that are natives of Europe; nor have the real Britiſh or French any particular averſion to them, as the Britiſh Americans have.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

A Liſt of the Names of all the different Indian Nations on the Continent of North-America, with their Situations, and the Number of Gun-men or Warriors in each Nation.

THE names of the different Indian nations in North America, with the numbers of their fighting men, from the beſt authority I have been able to collect, are as follow:

Names of the Nations.	Situation.	Warriors.
The Choctaws or Flat-heads	On the Mobile and Miſſiſſippi	4500
The Natches		150
The Chickeſaws		750
The Cherokees, behind South-Carolina		2500
The Catawbas, between North and South-Carolina		150
The Piantias, a wandering tribe on both ſides of the Miſſiſſippi		800
The Kaſquuaſquias, or Illinois in general, on the Illinois river, and between the Ouabache and the Miſſiſſippi		600

The

Names of the Nations.	Situation.	Warriors.
The Piankiſhaws	On the Ouabache	250
The Ouachtenons		400
The Kikapous		300
The Shawneſe, on the Siotto - -		500
The Delawares, on the weſt of the Ohio		300
The Miamis, on the Miſamis river falling into Lake Erie and the Miniamis		350
The upper Creeks, back of Georgia		4000
The middle Creeks, behind Weſt-Florida		
The lower Creeks, in Eaſt-Florida		
The Caouitas, on the eaſt of the river Alibamous - - - - -		700
The Alibamous, on the weſt of the Alibamous - - - - -		600
The Akanſaws, on the Akanſaw river falling into the Miſſiſſippi on the weſt ſide - - - - -		2000
The Ajoues, north of the Miſſouri		1000
The Paddoucas, weſt of the Miſſiſſippi		500
The white Panis	South of the Miſſouri	2000
The freckled or pricked Panis		2000

The

Names of the Nations.	Situation.	Warriors.
The Canſes	South of the Miſſouri	1600
The Oſages		600
The Grandes Eaux		1000
The Miſſouri, upon the river Miſſouri		3000
The Sioux of the woods	towards the heads of the Miſſiſſippi	1800
The Sioux of the meadows		2500
The Blancs, Barbus, or white Indians with beards		1500
The Aſſiniboils	far north near the lakes of the ſame name	1500
The Chriſtaneaux		3000
The Ouiſcanſins, on a river of that name that falls into the Miſſiſſippi in the eaſt ſide		550
The Maſcoutens	South of Puans Bay	500
The Sakis		400
The Mechecouakis		250
Folle Avoine, or the Wildoat Indians	Near Pucans Bay	350
The Pucans		700
The Powtewatamis; near St. Joſeph's River, and Detroit		350

The

Names of the Nations.	Situation.	Warriors.
The Meſſeſagues, or River Indians, being wandering tribes on the Lakes Huron and Superior	- -	2000
The Ottahwas	Near the Lakes Superior and Michigan	900
The Chipwas		5000
The Wiandots, near Lake Erie	-	300
The Six Nations, or as the French call them, the Iroquois, on the frontiers of New-York, &c.	- -	1500
The Round-headed Indians, near the head of the Ottahwa River	-	2500
The Algonquins, near the above		300
The Nipiſſins, near the above alſo		400
The Chalas	St. Laurence Indians, on the back of Nova-Scotia, &c.	130
The Amaliſtes		550
The Michmacks		700
The Abenaquis		350
The Conawaghrunas, near the falls of St. Lewis	- - - -	200
	Total amount	58,930

This

This being the whole number of men fit for bearing arms, from hence we may be enabled to form ſome idea of the number of all the Indian inhabitants, men, women and children, on the continent of North America; which calculation, however, I am ready to confeſs can be but rather a vague conjecture.

There being fifty-eight thouſand nine hundred and thirty warriors, it is computed that about one-third of the ſame number more are old men unfit for bearing arms, which makes the number of males come to maturity amount to about eighty-eight thouſand five hundred and ſeventy; and multiplied by ſix will produce five hundred and thirty-one thouſand four hundred and twenty, which I conſider as the whole number of ſouls, viz. men, women and children, of all the Indian nations that are come in any degree within our knowledge throughout the continent of North America.

It is a moſt melancholy conſideration to reflect, that theſe few are all that remain

of the many millions of natives, or aboriginal inhabitants with which this vaſt continent was peopled when firſt diſcovered by the Whites; and that even theſe will ſoon be extinct and totally annihilated, conſidering the amazingly rapid depopulation they have hitherto experienced, ſince that (to them) fatal period, or æra of the firſt arrival of the whites in America.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Leave Kentucky. Sail down the Ohio. The Falls of the Ohio. Agreeable Companions. Enter the Miſſiſſippi, and proceed down that River. Meet ſome Chickeſaws. Their fine Horſes. A gallant Nation. Attacked by a vaſt Superiority of French and Indians. Defeat them. Their Origin. Their Cavalry.

ABOUT ſix weeks after my arrival at Kentucky two gentlemen from Virginia, on a tour from thence to New Orleans, called to view the ſettlement.

They came from Pittſburg, by water, in a very fine batteau which they had purchaſed, and intended to proceed in the ſame manner down the Ohio and Miſſiſſippi, being furniſhed with letters of recommendation to the Spaniſh governor of New Orleans, &c.

Having remained along with us at Mr. Henderſon's ſome days, I diſcovered them to be uncommonly ſenſible intelli-

gent perſons, poſſeſſing an extraordinary ſhare of genius, ſpirit and enterprize, and was not difficult to be perſuaded to accompany them in their batteau to New Orleans.

For I promiſed myſelf abundance of ſatisfaction and gratification in this voyage down the Ohio and Miſſiſſippi.

Beſides I had been ſo exceſſively over-fatigued in my journey here, over the mountains, that I abſolutely dreaded the thoughts of returning in the ſame manner.

For theſe reaſons I embraced this offer with great pleaſure, and after returning Mr. Henderſon, and ſeveral other of the principal inhabitants of Kentucky, many thanks for their civility and hoſpitable entertainment, I embarked on board Mr. Wood's and Mr. Lewis's batteau, along with my young ſavage whom I brought from the eaſt ſide of the Alegany Mountains.

This young man, whoſe name was William Fortune, ſolicited me moſt earneſtly for per-

permiſſion to attend me this voyage, which I very readily granted, having hitherto found him of great uſe to me in every reſpect, and an excellent hunter and woodſman.

In both theſe offers I conſidered myſelf extremely fortunate. Firſt in my attendant, whoſe fidelity I had already experienced; and next in the company of theſe gentlemen who appeared equally gratified by having ſucceeded in perſuading me to undertake the voyage, and in being able to furniſh me with very tolerable accommodations.

My preſent companions and fellow-travellers were two gentlemen, the firſt named James Wood, eſq. who was member of the aſſembly of Virginia for the county of Frederick, was young, active and vigorous, was frank, open and communicative in his diſpoſition, and poſſeſſed a degree of candour and liberality of ſentiment, that rendered his acquaintance valuable in the higheſt degree; the other was Charles Lewis, of Auguſta county in Virginia, eſq. ſcarcely inferior to

Mr. Wood in every eſtimable qualification and deſert.

They had two Chickeſaw Indians, and three white men in their batteau, and as they juſt wanted one man more to complete their number, my ſervant ſupplied the place.

However, although I now call this man my ſervant, yet he himſelf never would have ſubmitted to ſuch an appellation, although he moſt readily performed every menial office, and indeed any ſervice I could deſire; yet ſuch is the inſolence, folly, and ridiculous pride of thoſe ignorant backwoods men, that they would conceive it an indelible diſgrace and infamy to be ſtyled ſervants, even to his Majeſty, notwithanding they will gladly perform the loweſt and moſt degrading ſervices for hire.

At the dawn of day on the nineteenth of July we left the Kentucky, and had a very pleaſant voyage down the Ohio and Miſſiſſippi, if one can give that appellation to ſuch a one, where we ſlept every night

night on terra firma, or at the ſhore in our batteau.

We paſſed by the mouth of a multitude of fine rivers, and ſome of vaſt magnitude, that empty themſelves into the Ohio and Miſſiſſippi.

On our right were the mighty rivers Ouabache or St. Jerome's, and Buffaloe River, beſides a great many inferior in ſize, whoſe names we could not diſcover, that run into the Ohio before the confluence thereof with the Miſſiſſippi.

On the left, the following rivers empty themſelves into it, viz. Rotten or Bear Creek, Reedy River, the prodigious river Cherokee or Hogohegee, Muddy River, Deep Creek, beſides many leſſer ones.

As we ſailed down the Miſſiſſippi, on our right were the rivers La Sonde, Aux Prunes, Metchigamias Lake or River, the river St. Francis, the White River, the river Sotouis or Akanſas, Red River, Piakemines River, beſides a vaſt number of others, ſome of a prodigious extent, as

well as many inferior ones, whoſe names we never heard.

And on the left ſide were the Kaſkinompa, the Chickeſaw, Prudhomme River, Maggotty River, or Margot River, Bayouc River, Soto River, Yaſſous River, Tioux River, Petit Gouffre River, Little River, and the Ibberville which ſcarcely deſerves the name of a river, and is only known by being the Eaſtern boundary of the Spaniards, forming the iſland of New Orleans, whoſe territory, from the Ibberville Southward includes both banks of the Miſſiſſippi; beſides a multitude of water-courſes, whoſe very names we could not poſſibly learn.

The day after we left Kentucky we paſſed the falls of the Ohio very ſafely, by keeping well over on the right or north-weſtern ſhore, for theſe falls are by no means dangerous; and after we had paſſed them we obſerved the low grounds on each ſide of the river widen very conſiderably, as well as the river itſelf, until we entered the Miſſiſſippi, where

where the land is ſo low that it is ſubject to frequent inundations.

After we had got ſome diſtance down the Miſſiſſippi, the high land, and ſometimes the mountains approached the river, ſo as to render the low grounds on each ſide very narrow, which however were luxuriantly rich and fertile, even beyond a poſſibility of deſcription.

There are likewiſe iſlands in many places, and ſome of them almoſt covered with reeds.

As we deſcended the ſtream of the Miſſiſſippi we obſerved ſeveral lakes, or as they are termed here *Lagunes*, ſometimes on one ſide, ſometimes on the other ſide of the river.

Theſe lagunes generally had vaſt quantities of large reeds growing round the edges; and within them there were thouſands of water fowl of every ſpecies.

Although there was no difficulty in killing multitudes of them, yet it was almoſt impoſſible to get them, becauſe of

the reeds, which rendered that part of the lagune, where they were, almoſt inacceſſible.

Theſe lagunes were formed by the vaſt body of water, that comes down in the annual periodical floods, forcing its way acroſs the necks of many different peninſulas formed by the extreme crooked and meandering courſe of the Miſſiſſippi, and diverting the channel of the river itſelf, from its old direction around the peninſula, to this new one acroſs the neck of it, by which means the place where the river formerly flowed becomes a large lake of ſtanding water, here denominated a lagune.

One day while we were on ſhore at the mouth of the Yaſſous, a placid, beautiful, and noble river, a ſmall hunting party of the Chickeſaws came up to us, and at the requeſt of our two Chickeſaw Indians, as well as the others, we remained there two days along with them.

The Chickeſaws are a very brave and reſpectable nation, not for their numbers,

for

for they are few, but for their virtue, and unconquerable ſpirit.

They are alſo remarkably handſome, and what is very ſingular, have a beautiful breed of horſes amongſt them, which they carefully preſerve unmixed.

The Chickeſaws, it is ſaid, and I make no doubt of the fact, came originally from South America, having travelled acroſs the continent for upwards of two thouſand miles, and brought theſe horſes along with them, which are of the breed of that much admired kind called Spaniſh gennets, having long ſince taken them from the Spaniards.

There is no Indian nation on the continent of North America near ſo handſome as the Chickeſaws. The Hurons come next them in beauty.

The Chickeſaw nation have always been ſteady friends and allies to Britain, and their fidelity was never ſhaken, although the French have often attempted it, by promiſes, threats, and the moſt formidable attacks with a force conſiderably

ably more than four times the number of all the warriors in the Chickeſaw nation, either to detach them from the intereſt of Great Britain or to cut them entirely off.

In the former war, while the French were in poſſeſſion of Canada, they detached about ſix hundred and fifty regular troops, and more than two thouſand five hundred Indians from Canada and Illinois, againſt this ſmall, but heroic community, for the avowed purpoſe, and with poſitive orders, of completing a total conqueſt, and even extirpation of the whole Chickeſaw nation.

They ſet out on this expedition with all the ſecrecy and confidence of ſucceſs imaginable, at leaſt in their own minds; but they little conſidered what ſort of men they were going to attack, and ſoon found, by dire experience, that no ſuperiority in numbers is equal to a determined valour and innate heroiſm; for the whole detachment was totally defeated, the French regulars being almoſt

to

to a man cut off, and the Indians their allies ſaved only a ſmall proportion of their number, by a precipitate flight, leaving behind them multitudes of wounded and ſlain.

This was the laſt formidable attack made on the Chickeſaw nation, either by the French, or the northern Indians; for there always has been a rooted enmity between the northern and ſouthern Indians, who have been almoſt perpetually at war with each other, without any real, and indeed without any oſtenſible cauſe.

But the Chickeſaws have always been diſtinguiſhed for their gallant actions, and feats of the higheſt heroiſm, which has rendered them, even individually, to be particularly reſpected throughout all the nations of North America.

For which reaſon Chickeſaw guides are more ſought after, and are much more ſerviceable than thoſe of any other nation.

For although their language is not commonly made uſe of in any nation but their

their own, yet it is underſtood by all, and among Indians is conſidered as the language of politeneſs and univerſality.

Another ſingularity that ſeems to be peculiar to this nation is, their frequently going out to meet their enemies on horſe-back, which, with their very fine horſes that they take ſuch delight in, renders them in fact a nation of cavalry.

This indeed is the caſe with no other nation either in North or South America, unleſs we except the Patagonians, thoſe men of vaſt and uncommonly large ſtature, lately diſcovered by admiral Byron, and the other circumnavigators, &c. on the coaſt of Patagonia, near the ſtreights of Magellan.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

Leave Yaſſous. Arrive at Natches. Proceed to New Orleans. French Inhabitants averſe to Spaniſh Government. Inſurrection quelled. Earneſtly wiſh for BRITISH *Liberty. Number of Families in New Orleans and Louiſiana.*

ON the third morning we ſet out from Yaſſous River, on our voyage down the Miſſiſſippi, after taking an affectionate leave of our friendly, and as we really found them, hoſpitable Chickeſaws.

We met with nothing very material nor intereſting until we arrived at the Natches, which we did on the 20th of Auguſt, being juſt thirty-two days from the time we left Kentucky.

Here we ſtaid three days, and in that time received many civilities and marks of kindneſs from Major Fields and Mr. L. Claiborne, who were ſettled on very fine and valuable plantations, upon the banks of the Miſſiſſippi, having come there from Virginia, of which colony they were alſo

natives; and we really found them to be very entertaining, ſenſible and enterpriſing men.

From Natches we proceeded on our voyage on the fourth morning, and arrived at New Orleans in four days, being on the twenty-ſeventh of Auguſt.

Here we found almoſt all the inhabitants were French; very few of them even underſtanding the Spaniſh language; and they entertained the moſt rooted and implacable averſion to the Spaniſh nation and government, as well as a ſtrong predilection for the Britiſh.

As a proof of this, although there is a penalty incurred, by proclamation of the Spaniſh Governor, of four hundred or five hundred dollars, for even admitting a Britiſh ſubject into one of their houſes, unleſs they immediately make government acquainted with it, yet they make no ſcruple nor difficulty of receiving any Engliſhman, and entertaining him in the moſt generous and hoſpitable manner openly; at the ſame time taking care to enhance the eſtimation

mation of their kind reception, by making him acquainted with the riſque they run, and the penalty they incur the forfeiture of thereby.

This is the general practice in the iſland of New Orleans, at ſome diſtance from the town, which however being the ſeat of government, and being alſo occupied with a Spaniſh garriſon, it would be impoſſible for the French inhabitants to fulfil ſuch hoſpitable intentions and purpoſes therein with ſafety.

They were at this time extremely mortified, humbled and intimidated by a circumſtance that had occurred but a ſhort time, at leaſt but a few years before our arrival.

Soon after the territory of New Orleans had been ceded by France to Spain, the French inhabitants aſſembled together, in a large body, on the thirtieth of October, one thouſand ſeven hundred and ſixty-eight, determined to expel Don Antonio d'Uloa the Spaniſh Governor, and all the other Spaniſh officers; accordingly on the ſecond of November they ſent them on

board a large Spaniſh ſhip in the harbour, with orders to leave the iſland immediately.

Previouſly to the above exploit they confined M. Aubry, who was Commandant while the place belonged to France.

The occaſion was, the Spaniards wanting to introduce their commercial regulations, which the inhabitants refuſed to ſubmit to, and declared they would be either French or Britiſh ſubjects, but never would conſent to be Spaniſh.

The Governor and the reſt of the Spaniſh Officers ſailed for the Havannah, and left in the harbour a Spaniſh frigate with the marines, not in a condition to put to ſea, and two hoſtages for payment of debts due to the French.

Four of the principal inhabitants embarked ſoon afterwards to lay a repreſentation of their affairs before the Court of France, and ſolicit redreſs of their grievances.

Things continued in this condition for ſome time, but at laſt General Count O'Reiley,

O'Reiley, a brave experienced officer of Iriſh deſcent, (who claims the iſland of Jamaica in the Weſt Indies, as lord proprietor when the Spaniards poſſeſſed it,) was ordered there by the Court of Madrid, and landed at New Orleans, with three thouſand Spaniards, and three or four ſhips of war.

The inhabitants then immediately ſubmitted; and General O'Reiley ordered thirty of the leading men in this affair to be executed, and confiſcated the eſtates of about two hundred more.

This ſeverity reſtrained their actions, but cannot command the will.

At this time ſo great is their deſire to be under Britiſh government, and ſo general, ſo hearty, ſo rooted is their deteſtation to that of Spain, that only a dozen or two of Britons, of ſpirit and enterprize, would be able to wreſt all that country from the Spaniards; as the inhabitants are all French, excepting the garriſon which conſiſts only of a handful of lazy, proud, miſerable Spaniards, who deſpiſe the French

ſettlers as cordially as they themſelves are hated by them in return.

At this time there would be nothing wanting or neceſſary but to erect the ſtandard of Great Britain, and the French inhabitants would one and all ſupport it; ſo much do they wiſh for Britiſh liberty, and to ſuch a degree do they deteſt the arbitrary government of Spain.

The number of families in the town and iſland of New Orleans, and on the weſt ſide of the Miſſiſſippi, may amount to twelve thouſand at leaſt, all of whom are thus averſe to be governed by the Spaniards.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Dangerous Alligators. Vaſt Fertility of the Soil. Spaniſh Beards. Wait on the Governor. New Orleans. Great Diſtreſſes of ſome Engliſh and French impriſoned by the Spaniards in New Mexico. Vaſt Flocks of Cattle and Horſes. Extenſive Savannahs. A good Prieſt. Leave New Orleans. Arrive at Manchac. Coaſt along the Gulf of Mexico. Mobile, Penſacola, Apalachicola, &c.

IN the river Miſſiſſipi, and on the banks, are many very ſingular appearances.

In the river, and in the creeks, rivulets and water-courſes falling into it, eſpecially near the mouth, are large dangerous animals named alligators, from ten to eighteen feet and upwards in length; they are a ſpecies of the crocodile, and equally, if not more dangerous than thoſe of the river Nile in Egypt; theſe alſo devouring men, oxen, or whatever elſe they can get within their horrid jaws, in that crafty ſubtle manner, ſo often deſcribed already in different authors.

Theſe render it dangerous to ſleep in open batteaux on the Miſſiſſippi, and on this account travellers are obliged to lie on ſhore every night, near to a large fire, which always prevents the approach of any beaſts of prey.

On this river the ſoil is ſo extremely rich, and ſo luxuriantly fertile, that reeds grow even on the high land; a circumſtance that I believe is not to be paralleled any where elſe in the univerſe.

The grand culture and ſtaple here being indigo, this amazing fertility of the ſoil not only produces larger crops thereof than are obtained from equal quantities of ground in any other land or country, but alſo enhances the value of the quality of it, which is always greater according to the ſuperior richneſs and depth of the ſoil.

Another very ſingular and ſtriking appearance is a kind of moſs, in long and numerous filaments, here called *Spaniſh Beards*, which hang in prodigious quantities, impending in hoary majeſty from all

all the large branches of the lofty oaks, ſometimes touching the very ground.

Theſe convey a venerable idea of vaſt antiquity, and ſtrike the mind with an awe, and a ſenſation of reverential regard that can ſcarcely be deſcribed.

This has alſo its uſes, being extremely ſerviceable and convenient to make our beds when we ſleep in the woods ; and it is clean, ſoft, agreeable, and abundant.

The town of New Orleans is ſituated on the eaſtern banks of the Miſſiſſippi, about ninety miles above Cape Laos or Mud-Cape, where that river falls into the gulf of Mexico.

The banks of the river are ſo perpendicular, and the water is ſo deep, that a ſhip of any burthen may lay her broadſide to the bank, to land and unload, and is moored by a cable faſtened to the trees on the ſhore.

The river is above a thouſand yards wide, and the current runs all downwards, as the tide does not reach near the town ; indeed the tide is ſcarcely perceived

at all within the mouth of this aſtoniſhing river, whoſe waters, eſpecially during the periodical floods, may be diſtinguiſhed in the gulf of Mexico for many leagues, ſome ſay above an hundred miles out at ſea.

The ſtreets of New Orleans are laid out in rectangular directions, the houſes are generally only one ſtory high, yet many of them pretty good, and they may amount in number to three or four hundred.

The iſland of New Orleans is generally pretty good land, and all of it very low and flat.

It is about an hundred and eighty or ninety miles in length, but not more than five miles from navigable water at any place throughout the whole of it.

On the very next day after our arrival at New Orleans, Mr. Wood, Mr. Lewis and I waited on the Spaniſh Governor; but being informed that he was engaged for that day, my companions declined ſending him any of the letters of introduction and recommendation they were furniſhed with.

Theſe

Indeed theſe haughty Virginians were ſo extremely incenſed at this refuſal of admiſſion, that it was with the utmoſt difficulty I could prevail upon them to conſent to pay their perſonal reſpects to the Governor any more at all, or to ſend or preſent their credentials; eſpecially as it did not appear to them, nor indeed to me, that he was really engaged at the time we received that meſſage and apology of excuſe from him, as we could plainly diſcern him, through a window, obſerving and making his remarks, as we judged, on us, while we were walking backwards and forwards in the piazza, in expectation of his anſwer; walking in that manner being a kind of exerciſe a Spaniard holds in great contempt.

However we were admitted on the day following, and were even honored by a very friendly reception; though I muſt confeſs that there appeared to me a ſtiffneſs and formality, in his Excellency, that indicated a diſtruſt, and ſeemed to ſay that he could have diſpenſed with our viſit; not that there was any thing perſonal meant to us,

for the frequent proofs of civility, and even generous attention, we received from him afterwards, evinced the contrary.

But we imputed it to that narrow, illiberal, and jealous policy of the Spaniſh government, by which they endeavour to preclude all other nations, not only from any communication with, but even as much from the knowledge of all their American ſettlements as poſſible.

The reſtrictions of the Spaniſh government on commerce render the prices of all European goods here very much advanced, and they would actually be almoſt intolerable, if the inhabitants did not contrive to get many things underhandedly from the Engliſh, French, and Dutch, by means of an illicit trade.

Indeed almoſt all the flour that ſupports New Orleans is imported from Philadelphia, in veſſels belonging to a commercial houſe there, viz. Meſſrs. Willing and Morris, who have obtained an excluſive priviledge, for that ſole purpoſe, from the King of Spain.

From

From this the Governor makes a perquiſite of twenty thouſand dollars annually, as all the flour, being conſigned to the King of Spain, is paid for by the Governor, who orders it to be diſtributed to the inhabitants at the rate of a dollar a barrel, clear gain advanced on the price, after the deduction of all coſts and charges.

During the time I was at New Orleans, a gentleman from Maryland, who had fallen, by a very unfortunate accident, into the hands of the Spaniards in New Mexico, and with ſeveral other Britiſh ſubjects had been moſt cruelly treated by them, arrived there.

Having at length obtained his liberty, for he had been a conſiderable time very rigidly confined, he came to New Orleans, to endeavour to procure a paſſage, either to Virginia, Maryland, or Philadelphia.

This gentleman, deſcended from a Roman Catholic family in Maryland, was maſter of a veſſel belonging to his brother Atha-

Athanaſius Ford, of Leonard Town, in St. Mary's County, and had ſailed from the river Potowmak, loaded with the French Neutrals (as they were called,) who had been removed from Nova-Scotia by the Britiſh government on account of their ſtrong predilection to the French intereſt there, which at every riſk they were always ready to promote and ſupport.

The veſſel was navigated by Britiſh ſailors, and was bound to the Miſſiſſippi, in order to carry theſe French Accadians to their country-men there, where they intended to ſettle.

But having got into the trade-winds, and being unacquainted with the navigation of that part of the gulf of Mexico, after having been reduced to the greateſt diſtreſs for want of proviſions, their whole ſtock being exhauſted for ſome time, having ſubſiſted on the rats, cats, and even all the ſhoes and leather in the veſſel, they ran into Bernard's bay, and landed at the mouth of Rio de la Norte, or Rio Grande, in the king-

kingdom or province of New Mexico, inſtead of the Miſſiſſippi.

Happening to diſcover a horſe, immediately after their coming on ſhore, they killed him for food, which was certainly very excuſable in their emaciated ſtarving condition.

They had ſcarce finiſhed their wretched repaſt, when the veſſel was ſeized on by the Spaniards, and confiſcated for the uſe of the King; and they were carried, moſt of them to the town of New Mexico, and ſome to Santa Fé, the capital, no leſs than eighty-ſix days journey within land from the place where they came on ſhore on this inhoſpitable coaſt.

Here they were all cloſely confined for ſome time.

But at length the common people were permitted to go at large, in the day, on condition of their labouring for the inhabitants.

Yet the officers belonging to the veſſel, as well as all the Engliſh ſailors, were ſtill impri-

impriſoned with the moſt rigid and barbarous ſeverity.

However they were alſo offered a limited enlargement, on condition of their ſigning a paper, written in the Spaniſh language, which however they privately contrived to obtain a tranſlation of, and found it contained an acknowledgment on their parts of having been guilty of the moſt unjuſtifiable and aggravated crimes, and of being treated with the greateſt humanity and tenderneſs during this their captivity.

This they had the reſolution and virtue of refuſing to ſubſcribe to, although they were actually in danger of ſtarving and periſhing for want of neceſſary food.

At length a prieſt, poſſeſſed of more humanity than the reſt of the barbarous inhabitants of that country, having called to viſit them, took compaſſion on their extreme wretchedneſs, made them a preſent of a fat bullock every day, and intereſted himſelf ſo effectually for them as to obtain their enlargement.

But

But ſo numerous were this man's flocks of cattle, as well as of horſes, that although theſe poor unfortunate creatures received above an hundred oxen from him, yet they could not be miſſed out of the whole flock.

And Mr. Ford aſſured me that he poſſeſſed more than fifteen thouſand horned cattle, and near ten thouſand horſes and colts, which were kept fat without any trouble the whole year round by the luxuriant paſture which that country affords.

For it ſeems the land there is not overgrown with woods, as in the reſt of America, but is univerſally a rich meadow, abounding with the fineſt graſs in the world, and interſperſed here and there with clumps or cluſters of tall and ſtately trees.

I made no conſiderable ſtay at New Orleans, which to me as well as to Mr. Wood, Mr. Lewis, and Mr. Ford, was rather a diſagreeable place; and Mr. Lewis and I ſet out in a batteau for Manchac, leaving both Mr. Wood and Mr. Ford there, who were about engaging a paſſage

for Philadelphia in one of Willing and Morris's veſſels.

It was five days before we arrived at Mr. Edmund Gray's near Manchac; but here I was moſt agreeably ſurpriſed at meeting with an old acquaintance from Georgia, along with whom I had been initiated into the the myſteries of free-maſonry, in my journey through North-Carolina.

His name was Allan Groves, and as he propoſed returning to Georgia by the ſame route as I did, we all agreed to join company together.

Having procured a batteau on the Iberville, or Amit River, which falls into Lake Maurepas, we embarked, and coaſted along the lakes, viz. Maurepas and Ponchatrain, paſſing by the mouth of the Nita Albany River, the Tangepahoa River, the Cheſoncto River, and the Pearl River which is divided into two branches, called Weſt River and Eaſt River, when it falls into the lake or bay of St. Lewis; alſo the river Ookahootoo, the Chencala River, the Booka Hooma River, Hunting River, Paſqua-

Paſquagoocula River, Cedar River, Pines Bay, and Pool River.

Having touched by the way at a vaſt many iſlands, among which are Mattheuraux Iſland, Roebuck Iſland, Cat Iſland, Ship Iſland, Broad Key, and Dauphin Iſland, we arrived at Mobile point, at the mouth of the great bay of Mobile, which is formed by a vaſt concourſe of mighty waters.

Here we made no ſtay, but immediately proceeded on our coaſting voyage; paſſing the mouth of Perdido River, Eſcambe or Jordan River, Middle or Governors River, Cheſter River, St. Roſa River, Bay and Iſland, Chatahooche River, St. Andrew's Bay, River, and Iſland, Roebuck point, St. Joſeph's Bay, Cape St. Blas or Eſcondido, and St. George's Iſland which forms the mouths of the river Caliſtobole, and of the mighty river of Apalachicola, which is the eaſtern boundary of the province of Weſt-Florida.

The lands in this province are indeed moſt amazingly fertile and rich, eſpecially on the banks of the Miſſiſſippi.

Old plantations, cultivated by the French fifty or ſixty years, produced laſt year, that is the year before I was there, from forty to ſixty buſhels of Indian corn to the acre.

The culture of every thing here is altogether by hand hoes, and manual labour of ſlaves, without the aſſiſtance of horſes or oxen.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

The Rivers Miſſiſſippi, Miſſouris, Illinois, Yaſſous, Akanſas, Rouge, Apalachicola, Mobile, &c. Colorado. North River, or Rio Bravo. New Mexico. Gulf of California. Mines of Potoſi. Acapulco. Old Mexico. La Vera Cruz. Diſtances of Places. Deſcription of the Country.

BEFORE I take my leave of the province of Weſt Florida, it may not be improper to give a ſketch of the courſes, extent, and combination of the rivers; the diſtances between different places, as well within the province, as on the weſt ſide of the river Miſſiſſippi, along the coaſt of the Bay of Mexico; as alſo the ſtate of the colony, culture of the ſoil, ſtaple commodities, and population, of Weſt Florida.

Weſt Florida is bounded on the ſouth by the Gulf of Mexico, including all iſlands, &c. within ſix leagues of the coaſt, from the mouth of Apalachicola to the lake Ponchartrain; on the weſt it is bounded by the lake Mauripas, and

a canal, or river, named Ibberville, that joins the laſt mentioned lake to the Miſſiſſippi, and by the Miſſiſſippi itſelf; on the north by a line drawn due eaſt from that part of the river Miſſiſſippi, which lies in the latitude of thirty-one degrees north, until it interſects the river Apalachicola or Catahouachee; and on the eaſt by the ſaid river, until it falls into the Gulf of Mexico.

Its greateſt length from eaſt to weſt, viz. from Apalachicola to the Miſſiſſippi, is about four hundred ſtatute miles; but its breadth is inconſiderable from north to ſouth, being in few places ſixty-nine miles according to theſe boundaries.

From Roſe Bay, and St. Mary's Bay, to the north line, is not more than forty miles, which is the general diſtance acroſs, as far weſt as the lakes Ponchartrain and Mauripas.

From the mouth of the rivers Caliſtobole and Apalachicola to the north line is eighty-five miles, which is the wideſt part of the province.

From cape Loas, or Mud Cape, at the mouth of the Miſſiſſippi, to the canal cut by the French from the Ibberville to the Miſſiſſippi, being the northern boundary of New Orleans on the eaſt of the Miſſiſſippi, is about an hundred and eighty miles by land.

The wideſt part of the iſland of New Orleans is from Turtle Point, and the Iſles Aux Aſſiettes, oppoſite to Cat Iſland, to the Miſſiſſippi, and is not more than forty miles at the broadeſt part, which is about thirty-five miles above the mouth of the river: then above that place, from lakes Ponchartrain and Mauripas, and from the Amit and Ibberville rivers, it is not more than five miles, in general, to the Miſſiſſippi.

The town of New Orleans is in that narrow part, between the ſouth end of lake Ponchartrain and the Miſſiſſippi, about ninety miles ſouth from the canal or river of Ibberville, and about the ſame diſtance north from the mouth of the Miſſiſſippi.

From the uppermoſt, or moſt northerly end of the Iſland of New Orleans, to that part of the Miſſiſſippi at the thirty-firſt degree of north latitude, is juſt fifty miles.

Theſe diſtances are in direct courſes over land, by no means following the meanders of the rivers, which would generally render them double.

This boundary, already mentioned, was that firſt eſtabliſhed for the province of Weſt Florida; but I have underſtood that the north line has been extended farther up the river ſince, to include the Natches, and the mouth of the river Yaſſous, to which laſt place it was carried back by Governor Johnſtone's proclamation.

From the upper part of the iſland of New Orleans to the confluence of the Yaſſous is about a hundred and thirty miles north.

From the mouth of the river Yaſſous, ſouth to Natches Old Town, is about eighty miles; from Natches, ſouth to Baton Rouge, and Fort Bute, is about

ſeventy-five miles; from thence ſouth to the mouth of Hooma River, where it enters the lake Mauripas, is about ſeventy-five miles.

From the mouth of the Yaſſous up to the firſt conſiderable fork, which is on the weſt ſide, is about twelve miles; and the Yaſſous is navigable forty-five leagues from its confluence with the Miſſiſſippi.

This province, extending ſo far along the coaſt of the Gulf of Mexico, and along the rivers Miſſiſſippi and Apalachicola, being about five hundred and ninety, or ſix hundred miles, muſt conſequently include a prodigious number of rivers; the chief of which, as well as of all North America and perhaps in the world, is the mighty and majeſtic river Miſſiſſippi, navigable to the falls of St. Anthony, which is computed to be eighteen hundred miles, and afterwards for a thouſand miles above the falls in batteaux and canoes; having the richeſt lands, the happieſt and moſt delightful variety of

climates, and paſſing through the largeſt and fineſt country upon earth.

Where it derives its ſource is not known, having been traced as far as fifty-five degrees north latitude, and an hundred and ten degrees weſt longitude from London; being even there a very large river.

The country in that part is very flat and marſhy, and the Indians themſelves cannot tell how much farther north and weſt it has its ſource.

From that place it runs in a ſouth-eaſt direction to the forty-ſecond degree north latitude, and ninetieth weſt longitude; then with many vaſt bendings, continues almoſt a due ſouth courſe, until it falls into the Gulf of Mexico in north latitude twenty-nine degrees ten minutes, and eighty-nine degrees thirty-five minutes weſt longitude; having received a vaſt number of wide, extenſive, and mighty rivers, and having ſtretched along this globe in a direct courſe, which has been traced, above three thouſand miles;

miles; and including the prodigious number of its bendings and meanders not leſs than ſix or ſeven thouſand miles.

Its name in the Indian language is ſaid to ſignify parent of rivers, or eldeſt ſon of the Ocean.

It receives more than an hundred very conſiderable rivers in its courſe, many of them ſome thouſand miles in length, the chief of which on the eaſtern ſide are the following, viz.

Firſt the Illinois, whoſe ſource is between the lakes Illinois or Michegan, Huron, and Erie; as the Miſſiſſippi itſelf, in one of its vaſt bendings, approaches near to lake Superior.

The ſecond is the vaſt river Ohio, or Fair River, a prodigious concourſe of mighty waters, extending behind all the Britiſh ſettlements, whoſe ſource is almoſt in New York government, being navigable in large batteaux within fourteen miles of lake Erie; ſo that the French, before the conqueſt of Canada by the Britiſh, ſent three thouſand men, with artillery,

military ſtores, baggage, &c. from Quebec to New Orleans; viz. up the river St. Laurence, acroſs lake Ontario, and lake Erie, and down French Creek, the Ohio, and the Miſſiſſippi.

The Ohio itſelf receives above an hundred rivers in its courſe, ſome of which (particularly the Cherokee or Hogohegee) are equal to the largeſt in Europe.

The laſt river that falls into the Miſſiſſippi on the eaſtern ſide, that I ſhall take notice of, is the Yaſſous, a fine, placid, deep, and beautiful ſtream, being navigable near an hundred and fifty miles.

It takes its riſe near the falls of the Cherokee, or Hogohegee River, and runs through the Chickeſaw nation, receiving many branches, but none very conſiderable, in its courſe of three hundred miles to the Miſſiſſippi, which is in a direct line, or five hundred miles with its windings.

From the ſource to the mouth of this very fine river, it is a moſt delightful open country, with few mountains or hills, con-

conſidering its inland ſituation, and is the happieſt, and moſt excellent and agreeable climate in the world.

It is poſſeſſed chiefly by the Chickeſaws, a very gallant, brave, and reſpectable nation, and firm Allies of Great Britain, as has been already mentioned.

On the weſtern ſide of the Miſſiſſippi are many vaſt rivers, but none more conſiderable than the Ohio. However not one of them is ſo well known.

The largeſt is the Pohitenous, or Miſouri, whoſe ſource has not been diſcovered, and whoſe courſe extends (perhaps) ſome thouſand miles, before it enters the Miſſiſſippi, which is almoſt oppoſite to the confluence of the Illinois, only about twenty-ſeven miles below.

A large river north of the Miſſoury is the river Moingona, and ſtill farther north is St. Peter's River.

South of the Miſſouri is the river St. Francis; proceeding ſouthward, the next is the Imahans or Akanſaw River.

Then

Then that moſt excellent, valuable, and delightful river, named Rio Rouge, or Red River, which is of vaſt extent, extremely crooked, placid, and beautiful beyond deſcription.

The Red River receives two very large branches on the north ſide, named the Black River, and Ox River, and falls into the Miſſiſſippi almoſt oppoſite to Tonikas in Weſt Florida: this is the laſt river I ſhall take notice of on the weſtern ſide of the Miſſiſſippi.

The moſt remarkable places weſt, along the coaſt of the great Bay of Mexico, from Cape Laos, or Mud Cape, at the mouth of the Miſſiſſippi, is firſt la Baliſe Fort and Iſland, ſome diſtance weſt is Enſenada de Palos, then Woods Bay and Iſland, Ouachas Lake, Aſcenſion Bay, Vermillion Bay, then from Ouachas Lake to North Cape are eight ſmall rivers, and two lakes.

There is alſo an iſland at the Cape, in which indeed is the Cape itſelf, firſt diſcovered in the year one thouſand ſeven hundred and twenty-ſix.

Weſt

Weſt of the Cape, the firſt is a ſmall river, and a large bay named Jacdaiches Bay, with three rivers running into it; the next is Mexicana River, which ſome diſtance from the ſea is named Adayes River; then a ſmall but long iſland; then the river Floris; a long iſland; the river Magdalen; another iſland; and a ſmall river; then Rio de la Trinidad; Dun River which falls into la Maligne River; Colorado or Cane River; little Cane River; and Guadaloupe River; Leon River; Rio del Vino; and Honda or Deep River, all fall into St. Bernards or St. Lewis's Bay, and the Bay of St. Joſeph.

On the ſouth-weſt of Maligne River M. la Salle ſettled in the year 1685, and was killed about three hundred miles up Trinidad River, in the year 1687.

On the river Sablomini is the town and ſettlement of Preſidio; within the bay are five iſlands; and upon the banks of theſe different rivers and their branches are the nations of Killamouches and Allacappa, wandering Indians,

The

The rivers Guadaloupe and Leon fall into St. Joſeph's Bay, on the ſouth-weſt of which is a very long and large iſland named St. Joſeph's iſland; and the rivers Honda, Del Vino, Sacro, and Nuces or Nutts, fall into a Bay on the ſouth-weſt of it, forming St. Joſeph's Lake or Bay.

On the ſouth ſouth-weſt is the mouth of the great river Bravo, or De la Norte, which bounds on the north and eaſt the kingdom of New Leon, and is indeed a very large and noble river.

The next river of any note is Rio de las Palmas, which is named Rio de las Nacos at ſome diſtance from the ſea. This is a fine beautiful large river, and derives its ſource within an hundred miles of the Gulf of California in the South Sea.

Rio de la Norte or North River is alſo a very extenſive and charming river, conſiderably larger than the laſt mentioned one, running in a courſe about middle way between the Miſſiſſippi and the Californian Gulf, and the rivers Colorado, le los Martyres, and Rio Grande le los Apoſtolos,

Apoſtolos, or Del Coral or Blue River, which form or fall into the Gulf, but is nearer to California by five or ſix hundred miles than to the Miſſiſſippi.

Theſe vaſt rivers, eſpecially Rio de la Norte, and the Miſſouri, head very near each other, about the forty-ſixth degree north latitude, and the hundred and fifth weſt longitude.

I have thus inveſtigated the ſource of theſe prodigious and extenſive waters, on a foundation that may be relied on; and it will give power to form a more juſt and perfect idea of the country, by mentioning the diſtances theſe vaſt waters, and principal places, are from each other.

From Cape Loas to Bernard's Bay is about four hundred and fifty miles, thence to the mouth of Rio de la Norte two hundred, then to Rio de las Palmas is ſeventy-five miles, which make altogether ſeven hundred and twenty-five miles.

The courſe of Rio de las Palmas is nearly eaſt, and the extent of it about five hundred and fifty miles.

From

From the mouth of Rio de las Palmas, in the Gulf of Mexico, weſt to the South Sea, at the mouth of the river Culiacan, the beginning of the Californian Gulf, is ſix hundred miles.

From Tonikas on the Miſſiſſippi to Mexico, or Juan Baptiſta on Rio de la Norte, is ſix hundred and fifty miles; viz. to the croſſing of Red River an hundred and fifty, to Adayes ſeventy-five, to Trinidad ſeventy-five, to the Rio St. Marco is an hundred and fifty, to Mexico on the North River two hundred.

From Mexico to California, at the Bay of St. Lucas, Pearl River, or the Bay of St. Mary's near Cinaloa, or to Culiacan, is five hundred and ſeventy-five miles; viz. to the head of Pearl River three hundred and ſeventy-five miles, to the mouth two hundred and fifty miles, this being in the ſouth part of New Navarre.

New Mexico or St. Paul's is about ſix hundred miles, up the North River, from the Gulf of Mexico.

From

From Mexico, on the North River, to the mines of Potoſi is five hundred miles, to Old Mexico ſeven hundred, to Acapulco nine hundred, and the ſame to La Vera Cruz.

From Acapulco to La Vera Cruz is three hundred miles, from Old Mexico to La Vera Cruz two hundred and ſeventy, and to Acapulco two hundred and ſeventy.

All this country, to the weſt of the Miſſiſſippi, is incomparably pleaſant and delightful.

In the fertility of the ſoil, in the agreeable mildneſs of the climate, in the ſoftneſs and ſalubrity of the air, as well as in the abundance and excellence of moſt beautiful water-courſes, it is not exceeded, perhaps not equalled, by any other part of the whole immenſe continent of America. Indeed it can be ſurpaſſed by no country in the univerſe. The multitude of moſt elegant and charming ſituations that excel in grandeur and delightfulneſs of perſpective, as well as the aſtoniſhing luxuriance of the ſoil, are far beyond any thing that can be conceived. There

There are alſo vaſt numbers of excellent harbours, and beautiful extenſive navigable rivers. The earth pours forth every vegetable production in the moſt abundant profuſion, almoſt ſpontaneouſly, and in a manner without labour. Black cattle, horſes, and every uſeful animal, multiply to an incredible degree, without any kind of trouble, as there is no occaſion for providing a ſtock of provender for them againſt winter. In ſhort, there is no advantage, charm, or deſirable qualification, that bountiful nature can beſtow, but is heaped, with a degree of profuſion, on this lovely country, that is not to be deſcribed in language, or conceived in idea. For it really is capable of being rendered, not only the garden of America, but of the whole world.

Yet this fine country is at preſent little better than an uncultivated deſart, owing to the miſtaken and narrow policy of the Spaniſh government, under whoſe abſolute, and uncontrouled domination it has ever remained.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Jan. 2003

PreservationTechnologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111